



SMITH'S
SMALLER LATIN
GRAMMAR.



LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO



LONDON PUBLIC LIBRARY,
& ART MUSEUM
LONDON - ONTARIO

1. N. B. 1-2
Journal of
E. H. ...

A SMALLER GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE.

By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

For the Use of the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools.

THIRTEENTH EDITION

Toronto:
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY
(LIMITED).

1879.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH, INFLEXION, STEM	3
III. THE SUBSTANTIVE	4
IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION	5
V. THE SECOND DECLENSION	6
VI. THE THIRD DECLENSION	8
VII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	18
VIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION	19
IX. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES	20
X. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES	21
XI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	24
XII. THE NUMERALS	27
XIII. THE PRONOUNS	30
XIV. THE VERB	35
XV. THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS..	38
XVI. DEPONENT VERBS	58
XVII. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.. .. .	60
XVIII. STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS	61
XIX. IRREGULAR VERBS	65
XX. DEFECTIVE VERBS	73
XXI. IMPERSONAL VERBS	75
XXII. ADVERBS	76
XXIII. PREPOSITIONS	78
XXIV. CONJUNCTIONS.. .. .	80
XXV. INTERJECTIONS.. .. .	81
XXVI. APPENDIX A.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES	82
XXVII. APPENDIX B.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS	89
XXVIII. FORMATION OF WORDS. DERIVATION OF SUB- STANTIVES	101
XXIX. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES	107
XXX. DERIVATION OF VERBS	110
XXXI. DERIVATION OF ADVERBS	112
XXXII. COMPOSITION OF WORDS.. .. .	113

PART II.—SYNTAX.

CHAP.	PAGE
XXXIII. OF SENTENCES	115
XXXIV. CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT	116
XXXV. THE NOMINATIVE CASE	120
XXXVI. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE	121
XXXVII. THE GENITIVE	128
XXXVIII. THE DATIVE	124
XXXIX. THE ABLATIVE	140
XL. THE VOCATIVE	148
XLI. ADJECTIVES	149
XLII. PRONOUNS	153
XLIII. THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD	159
XLIV. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD	163
XLV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	164
XLVI. THE INFINITIVE MOOD	180
XLVII. PARTICIPLES	184
XLVIII. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE	186
XLIX. THE SUPINES	188

PART III.—PROSODY.

L. QUANTITY	190
LI. METRE	198

APPENDICES.

I. THE CALENDAR	208
II. MONEY	209
III. ROMAN NAMES	210
IV. ABBREVIATIONS	211
V. VERSUS MEMORIALES	213

A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Obs. 1. Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

Obs. 2. The letter *y* does not belong to the old Latin alphabet, and occurs only in words borrowed from the Greek.

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

	Sharp or Thin.	Flat or Medial.	Aspirated.
<i>Labials</i> (lip-letters)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f</i>
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-letters)	<i>c</i> (<i>k, q</i>)	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>
<i>Dentals</i> (teeth-letters)	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	(none).

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Sibilants* are *s, x*, and *z*. *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs*: *as, Jux = ducs, a leader; rex = regs, a king*. *X* and *z* are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v*.

Obs. 1. *K* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: *as, Kalendariae, the Calends*.

Obs. 2. *Q* is used only before *u*: *as, sequor, I follow*.

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use; and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

Obs. The diphthongs *ae (æ), oe (œ)*, are pronounced as *ē*.

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A *Syllable* is either *short, long, or doubtful*, according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity*.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘): *as, pater, a father*.

Obs. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: *as, pater, a boy*.

A *long vowel* is marked by (—), and may be either long by nature: *as, mater, a mother*; or long by position: *as, mensa, a table; dux, a leader*. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

Obs. 1. These marks of quantity were not used by the Latin writers; serving only for grammatical purposes.

Obs. 2. All diphthongs are long by nature: *as, aurae, breezes*.

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long: *as, amor or amō, I love, tenebrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

Obs. A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *l* or *r*: *as, duplex or dūplex, twofold; tenebrae or tenēbrac, darkness*.

§ 8. *Accent*.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable: *as, musa, a muse, dolus, deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long: *as, Romanus, a Roman*; or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short: *as, dominus, a lord*.

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech :

I. The NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, or simply SUBSTANTIVE, is the name (Nōmen) of a person or thing: as, *Caesār, Caesar*; *vir, a man*; *dōmūs, a house*; *virtūs, valour*.

Obs. Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns*: all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

II. The NOUN ADJECTIVE, or simply ADJECTIVE (Adjectivum, *joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature: as, *bōnus vir, a good man*.

III. The PRONOUN (Prōnōmen) is used instead of a Substantive: as, *ēgo, I*; *tū, thou*.

IV. The VERB (Verbum, *word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something: as, *ēquus currit, the horse runs*; *vir sēdet, the man sits*.

V. The ADVERB (Adverbium) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning: as, *cēlēriter currit, he runs quickly*; *māgis pius, more dutiful*; *sātīs diū, long enough*.

VI. The PREPOSITION (Praepōsitio) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words: as, *in, in*; *hābitō in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

VII. The CONJUNCTION (Conjunctio) unites words and sentences: as, *ēt, and*; *ūt, in order that*: *vir et fēmīna, the man and the woman*; *ēdimūs ūt vivāmus, we eat in order that we may live*.

VIII. The INTERJECTION (Interjectio) is a word of exclamation: as, *heu, alas!*

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language: thus *dōmus* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (Dēclensio): the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (Conjūgatio).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called PARTICLES.

§ 12. The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in *trab-s, a plank*, *trāb-īs, of a plank*, *trāb-ī, to a plank*, the Stem is *trāb*: and in *lēg-o, I read*, *lēg-īs, thou readest*, the Stem is *lēg*.

CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Mascūlinum), the *Feminine* (Fēmīnīnum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

Obs. Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nūmēri): the *Singular* (Singulāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūrālis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōmīnātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, māgister dōcēt, *the master teaches*; dōmus est amplā, *the house is large*.

II. The *Genitive* (Gēnītīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, māgistri dōmus, *the master's house*; fōlia arbōrum, *the leaves of trees*.

III. The *Dative* (Dātīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, do librum māgistro, *I give the book to the master*.

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, āmo māgistrum, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards*: as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome*.

V. The *Vocative* (Vōcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O māgistēr, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectūs est, *he was killed with a spear*; aestātē, *in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from*: as, ābeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome*.

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called Declensions, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	ae	ī	is	ūs	ei
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	ā-rum	ō-rum	-um i-um	ū-um	ē-rum

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in:—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a	o	consonant or i	u	e

CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST OR **A** DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in *ā*.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Mens-ā, <i>a table</i>		Mens-ae, <i>tables</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>of a table</i>		Mens-ārum, <i>of tables</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>to or for a table</i>		Mens-īs, <i>to or for tables</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Mens-am, <i>a table</i>		Mens-ās, <i>tables</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Mens-ā, <i>O table</i> [table.]		Mens-ae, <i>O tables</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Mens-ā, <i>by, with, or from a</i>		Mens-īs, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

Obs. The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nauta* (masc.), *a sailor*.

Examples for Declension.

<i>āla</i> , <i>a wing.</i>		<i>hōra</i> , <i>an hour.</i>		<i>silva</i> , <i>a wood.</i>
<i>barba</i> , <i>a beard.</i>		<i>poena</i> , <i>a punishment.</i>		<i>stella</i> , <i>a star.</i>
<i>causa</i> , <i>a cause.</i>		<i>fēmīna</i> , <i>a woman.</i>		<i>vīa</i> , <i>a way.</i>
<i>coena</i> , <i>a supper.</i>		<i>porta</i> , <i>a gate.</i>		<i>victōria</i> , <i>a victory.</i>

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a*.

Obs. 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in *fāmīlia*, when compounded with *pāter*, *māter*, *fīlius* or *filia*: as, *pāterfāmīliās*, *the father of a family*; *Gen. patris fāmīliās*, *Dat. patrī fāmīliās*, &c. In poetry the old form of the *Genitive ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: as, *aquāi*, *of the water*; *terrāi*, *of the earth*.

Obs. 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *ārum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of *cōlā* and *gēnā*: as *coelīcōlum* from *coelīcōla*, *an inhabitant of heaven*; *terrīgēnum* from *terrīgēna*, *earth-born*: also in *drachmum*, *amphōrum*, from *drachma*, *amphōra* (with numerals): and in Greek patronymies: as, *Aeneādum*, from *Acneādēs*, *a descendant of Aeneas*.

Obs. 4. The *Dative and Ablative Plural* of some words end in *abus*: as, *deābus* from *dca*, *a goadess*; *filiabus* from *filia*, *a daughter*. This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: as, *deis* from *deus*, *a god*; *filiis* from *filius*, *a son*. So likewise *duabus* from *duae*, *two*; *ambabus* from *ambae*, *both*. See § 68.

§ 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē*, *as*, *ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

	Feminine.	Masculine.	Masculine.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē, <i>abridgment</i>	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
<i>Gen.</i>	Ēpītōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Ēpītōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	Ēpītōm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
<i>Voc.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā, ē)
<i>Abl.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā).

CHAPTER V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ěr (ir), and of Neuter Substantives in um.

A. Masculine.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dōmĭn-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmĭn-ĭ,	lords
Gen.	Dōmĭn-ĭ, <i>of a lord</i>	Dōmĭn-ōrum,	of lords
Dat.	Dōmĭn-ō, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dōmĭn-ĭs,	to or for lords
Acc.	Dōmĭn-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmĭn-ōs,	lords
Voc.	Dōmĭn-ĕ, <i>O lord</i> [<i>a lord</i>]	Dōmĭn-ĭ,	O lords [<i>lords</i>]
Abl.	Dōmĭn-ō, <i>by, with, or from</i>	Dōmĭn-ĭs,	by, with, or from

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Māgĭstĕr, <i>a master</i>	Māgĭstr-ĭ,	masters
Gen.	Māgĭstr-ĭ, <i>of a master</i>	Māgĭstr-ōrum,	of masters
Dat.	Māgĭstr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i>	Māgĭstr-ĭs,	to or for masters
Acc.	Māgĭstr-um, <i>a master</i>	Māgĭstr-ōs,	masters
Voc.	Māgĭstĕr, <i>O master</i>	Māgĭstr-ĭ,	O masters
Abl.	Māgĭstr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Māgĭstr-ĭs,	by, with, or from masters.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Puĕr, <i>a boy</i>	Puĕr-ĭ,	boys
Gen.	Puĕr-ĭ, <i>of a boy</i>	Puĕr-ōrum,	of boys
Dat.	Puĕr-ō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Puĕr-ĭs,	to or for boys
Acc.	Puĕr-um, <i>a boy</i>	Puĕr-ōs,	boys
Voc.	Puĕr, <i>O boy</i> [<i>boy</i>]	Puĕr-ĭ,	O boys
Abl.	Puĕr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Puĕr-ĭs,	by, with, or from boys.

B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.	
Nom.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	kingdoms
Gen.	Regn-ĭ, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Regn-ōrum,	of kingdoms
Dat.	Regn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Regn-ĭs,	to or for kingdoms
Acc.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	kingdoms
Voc.	Regn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	O kingdoms
Abl.	Regn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Regn-ĭs,	by, with, or from kingdoms.

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, pĭrus, *a pear-tree*, Cōrinthus, *Corinth*; and a few other words: as, hūmus, *the ground*, alvus, *the belly*, cōlus, *a distaff*, vannus, *a winnowing fan*.

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: vĭrus, *poison*; pĕlāgus, *the ocean*; and vulgus, *the multitude*. The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. All Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in *ä*.

Examples for Declension like *dömñūs*.

<i>cibus</i> , food.	<i>annus</i> , a year.	<i>nidus</i> , a nest.
<i>lūpus</i> , a wolf.	<i>rāmus</i> , a branch.	<i>hortus</i> , a garden.
<i>nūmērus</i> , a number.	<i>rīvus</i> , a stream.	<i>cervus</i> , a stag.
<i>mālus</i> (<i>f.</i>), an apple-tree.	<i>ulmus</i> (<i>f.</i>), an elm.	<i>prūnus</i> (<i>f.</i>), a plum-tree.

Examples for Declension like *māgistēr*.

<i>āger</i> , a field.	<i>cancer</i> , a crab.	<i>fāber</i> , a smith.
<i>āper</i> , a boar.	<i>cāper</i> , a he-goat.	<i>līber</i> , a book.

Examples for Declension like *puēr*.

<i>sōcer</i> , a father-in-law.	<i>gēner</i> , a son-in-law.	<i>līber</i> , Bacchus.
<i>vesper</i> , evening.	<i>ādulter</i> , an adulterer.	<i>lībērī</i> (pl.), children.

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, *Obs.* 1.

NOTE 2. *Vesper* is irregular. See § 53, *Obs.* 2.

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

<i>dōnum</i> , a gift.	<i>scūtum</i> , a shield.	<i>bellum</i> , war.
<i>tectum</i> , a roof.	<i>vīnum</i> , wine.	<i>templum</i> , a temple.

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as *dōmīno*, *regno*, *puēro*, *māgistēro*. The *Nominative Singular* originally ended in *ōs*, and the *Accusative* in *om*: as, *dōmīnō-s*, *dōmīno-m*: *puēro-s*, *puēro-m*. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *o*: as *servō-s*, *servo-m*, a slave.

Obs. 2. When the *Genitive Singular* ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *ī*: as, *filī* instead of *filīi*, of a son; *ōtī* instead of *ōtīi*, of leisure.

Obs. 3. The *Vocative Singular* of *filius*, a son, *gēnius*, a guardian spirit, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *ī*: as, *filī*, O son; *gēnī*, O guardian spirit; *Laelī*, O Laelius; *Tullī*, O Tullius.

Obs. 4. The *Genitive Plural* of some words ends in *um* instead of *ōrum*. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, *nummum* from *nummus*, a piece of money; *sestertium* from *sestertius*, a sestertoe, a silver coin (about 2*d.*); *mōdium* from *mōdius*, a Roman corn-measure, a peck; *fabrum*, from *fāber*, a smith.

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are *vīr*, a man, *Gen.* *vīr-i*, &c., with its compounds, *triumvīr*, &c.; and *lēvīr*, *frī*, a husband's brother, a brother-in-law.

Obs. 6. *Deūs*, *God*, is declined in the following manner:

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Deūs</i> , God	<i>Deī</i> , <i>Diī</i> , or <i>DI</i> , Gods
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Deī</i> , of God	<i>Deōrum</i> or <i>Deūm</i> , of Gods
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Deō</i> , to God	<i>Deīs</i> <i>Diīs</i> , or <i>Dīs</i> , to Gods
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Deum</i> , God	<i>Deōs</i> , Gods
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Deūs</i> , O God [God.]	<i>Deī</i> , <i>Diī</i> , or <i>DI</i> , O Gods [Gods.]
<i>Abi.</i>	<i>Deō</i> , by, with, or from	<i>Deīs</i> , <i>Dīs</i> , or <i>Dīs</i> , by, with, or from

The forms *Deī* (pl.) and *Deis* are rarely used.

§ 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ōs* frequently have the Greek endings *ōs* and *ōn* instead of the Latin *ūs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ōs* (*ωs*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen. i* as well as *o*:

<i>Nom.</i> Dēlōs		Andrōgēōs
<i>Gen.</i> Dēlī		Andrōgēī, Andrōgēō
<i>Dat.</i> Dēlō		Andrōgēō
<i>Acc.</i> Dēlōn, Dēlam		Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
<i>Voc.</i> Dēlē		Andrōgēōs
<i>Abl.</i> Dēlō		Andrōgēō

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā*: as, *Andrōgēōnā*: so, *Nom. Athōs*, *Acc. Athōnā*.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*εὐs*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

<i>Nom.</i> Orphēus		Orphēus
<i>Gen.</i> Orphēī, Orphēī		Orphēōs
<i>Dat.</i> Orphēō		Orphēī, Orphēī
<i>Acc.</i> Orphēum		Orphēa
<i>Voc.</i> Orphēū		Orphēū
<i>Abl.</i> Orphēō		

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um*: as, *Geōrgiōn librī*, *the books of the Georgics*.

CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes *p*, *b*, and in the labial liquid *m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Trāb-s (f.), a beam	Trāb-ēs,	beams
<i>Gen.</i> Trāb-is, of a beam	Trāb-um,	of beams
<i>Dat.</i> Trāb-i, to or for a beam	Trāb-ībūs,	to or for beams
<i>Acc.</i> Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs,	beams
<i>Voc.</i> Trāb-s, O beam [beam.]	Trāb-ēs,	O beams
<i>Abl.</i> Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a	Trāb-ībūs,	by, with, or from beams.

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Princēp-s (m.), a chief	Princēp-ēs,	chiefs
<i>Gen.</i> Princēp-is, of a chief	Princēp-um,	of chiefs
<i>Dat.</i> Princēp-i, to or for a chief	Princēp-ībūs,	to or for chiefs
<i>Acc.</i> Princēp-em, a chief	Princēp-ēs,	chiefs
<i>Voc.</i> Princēp-s, O chief [a chief.]	Princēp-ēs,	O chiefs [chiefs.]
<i>Abl.</i> Princēp-ē, by, with, or from	Princēp-ībūs,	by, with, or from

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Hiēm-s (f.), winter	Hiēm-ēs,	winters
<i>Gen.</i> Hiēm-is, of winter	Hiēm-um,	of winters
<i>Dat.</i> Hiēm-i, to or for winter	Hiēm-ībūs,	to or for winters
<i>Acc.</i> Hiēm-em, winter	Hiēm-ēs,	winters
<i>Voc.</i> Hiēm-s, O winter [winter.]	Hiēm-ēs,	O winters [ters.]
<i>Abl.</i> Hiēm-ē, by, with, or from	Hiēm-ībūs,	by, with, or from win-

Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Urb-s (f.), a city	Urb-ēs,	cities
<i>Gen.</i> Urb-is, of a city	Urb-ium,	of cities
<i>Dat.</i> Urb-i, to or for a city	Urb-ībūs,	to or for cities
<i>Acc.</i> Urb-em, a city	Urb-ēs,	cities
<i>Voc.</i> Urb-s, O city [city.]	Urb-ēs,	O cities
<i>Abl.</i> Urb-ē, by, with, or from a	Urb-ībūs,	by, with, or from cities.

Obs. 1. When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ium*, not *um*: as *urb-ium*. So also below: *arx*, *Gen. Pl. arc-ium*; *mons*, *Gen. Pl. mont-ium*.

Obs. 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ř* in the last syllable, that *ř* is changed into *ř* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem princēp*, *Gen. princēp-is*. So also below: *Stem jūdĉc*, *Gen. ůdĉc-is*; *Stem mlĉt*, *Gen. mlĉt-is*; *Stem nŃmĉn*, *Gen. nŃmĉn-is*.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes *c, g*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dux (c. g.), a leader	Důc-ēs,	leaders
<i>Gen.</i> Důc-is, of a leader	Důc-um,	of leaders
<i>Dat.</i> Důc-i, to or for a leader	Důc-ībūs,	to or for leaders
<i>Acc.</i> Důc-em, a leader	Důc-ēs,	leaders
<i>Voc.</i> Dux, O leader [leader.]	Důc-ēs,	O leaders
<i>Abl.</i> Důc-ē, by, with, or from a	Důc-ībūs,	by, with, or from leaders.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), a law		Lēg-ēs, laws
Gen.	Lēg-is, of a law		Lēg-um, of laws
Dat.	Lēg-i, to or for a law		Lēg-ibūs, to or for laws
Acc.	Lēg-em, a law		Lēg-ēs, laws
Voc.	Lex, O law [law.		Lēg-ēs, O laws
Abl.	Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a		Lēg-ibūs, by, with, or from laws

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Jūdex (c.), a judge		Jūdic-ēs, judges
Gen.	Jūdic-is, of a judge		Jūdic-um, of judges
Dat.	Jūdic-i, to or for a judge		Jūdic-ibūs, to or for judges
Acc.	Jūdic-em, a judge		Jūdic-ēs, judges
Voc.	Jūdex, O judge [judge.		Jūdic-ēs, O judges [judges
Abl.	Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a		Jūdic-ibūs, by, with, or from

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Arx (f.), a citadel		Arc-ēs, citadels
Gen.	Arc-is, of a citadel		Arc-um, of citadels
Dat.	Arc-i, to or for a citadel		Arc-ibūs, to or for citadels
Acc.	Arc-em, a citadel		Arc-ēs, citadels
Voc.	Arx, O citadel [citadel		Arc-ēs, O citadels
Abl.	Arc-ē, by, with, or from a		Arc-ibūs, by, with, or from citadels.

Examples for Declension.

nux (f.),	nūc-is,	a nut.	grex (m.),	grēg-is,	a flock.
fax (f.),	fāc-is,	a torch.	rēmex (m.),	rēmīg-is,	a rover.
pax (f.),	pāc-is,	peace.	pollex (m.),	pollīc-is,	the thumb.
fornax (f.),	fornāc-is,	an oven.	index (c.),	indīc-is,	an informer.
vox (f.),	vōc-is,	a voice.	vertex (m.),	vertīc-is,	an eddy.
rādix (f.),	rādic-is,	a root.	falx (f.),	falc-is,	a sickle.
rex (m.),	reg-is,	a king.	merx (f.),	merc-is,	merchandise.

Obs. Cs and gs are contracted into x: as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, snow, Gen. nīv-is, Dat. nīv-i, &c., the Nom. ends in x, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetā-s (f.), an age		Aetāt-ēs, ages
Gen.	Aetāt-is, of an age		Aetāt-um, of ages
Dat.	Aetāt-i, to or for an age		Aetāt-ibūs, to or for ages
Acc.	Aetāt-em, an age		Aetāt-ēs, ages
Voc.	Aetā-s, O age [an age.		Aetāt-ēs, O ages
Abl.	Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from		Aetāt-ibūs, by, with, or from ages.

Sing.	2	Plur.
Nom. Lāpī-s (m), a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Gen. Lāpīd-is, of a stone	Lāpīd-um,	of stones
Dat. Lāpīd-i, to or for a stone	Lāpīd-ībūs,	to or for stones
Acc. Lāpīd-em, a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones
Voc. Lāpī-s, O stone [a stone.	Lāpīd-ēs,	O stones
Abl. Lāpīd-ē, by, with, or from	Lāpīd-ībūs,	by, with, or from stones.

Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Milē-s (c.), a soldier	Milīt-ēs,	soldiers
Gen. Milīt-is, of a soldier	Milīt-um,	of soldiers
Dat. Milīt-i, to or for a soldier	Milīt-ībūs,	to or for soldiers
Acc. Milīt-em, a soldier	Milīt-ēs,	soldiers
Voc. Milē-s, O soldier [soldier.	Milīt-ēs,	O soldiers [diere.
Abl. Milīt-ē, by, with, or from a	Milīt-ībūs,	by, with, or from sol-

Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Mon-s (m.), a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Gen. Mont-is, of a mountain	Mont-ium,	of mountains
Dat. Mont-i, to or for a mountain	Mont-ībūs,	to or for mountains
Acc. Mont-em, a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains
Voc. Mon-s, O mountain	Mont-ēs,	O mountains
Abl. Mont-ē, by, with, or from a mountain.	Mont-ībūs,	by, with, or from moun- tains.

Examples for Declension.

civītās (f.), civītāt-is, a state.	obsēs (c.), obsīd-is, a hostage.
virtūs (f.), virtūt-is, virtue.	pars (f.), part-is, a part.
sācerdōs (c.), sācerdōt-is, a priest, priestess.	serpens (c.), serpent-is, a serpent.
cassīs (f.), cassīd-is, a helmet.	ars (f.), art-is, an art.
cōmēs (c.), cōmīt-is, a companion.	frons (f.), front-is, a forehead.

Obs. 1. *T* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, aetā-s, lāpī-s, milē-s, mon-s, instead of aetat-s, lāpīd-s, milēt-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In *nox*, noct-is, *night*, the *Stem* is noct: in the *Nom.* *t* is dropped before *s*, and the letters *cs* are contracted into *x*: noct-s = noc-s = nox.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Consūl (m.), a consul	Consūl-ēs,	consuls
Gen. Consūl-is, of a consul	Consūl-um,	of consuls
Dat. Consūl-i, to or for a consul	Consūl-ībūs,	to or for consuls
Acc. Consūl-em, a consul	Consūl-ēs,	consuls
Voc. Consūl, O consul	Consūl-ēs,	O consuls
Abl. Consūl-ē, by, with, or from a consul.	Consūl-ībūs,	by, with, or from consuls.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Clāmōr (m.), a shout		Clāmōr-ēs, shouts
Gen.	Clāmōr-īs, of a shout		Clāmōr-um, of shouts
Dat.	Clāmōr-ī, to or for a shout		Clāmōr-ībūs, to or for shouts
Acc.	Clāmōr-em, a shout		Clāmōr-ēs, shouts
Voc.	Clāmōr, O shout [a shout.		Clāmōr-ēs, O shouts [shouts.
Abl.	Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from		Clāmōr-ībūs, by, with, or from

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Ansēr (m.), a goose		Ansēr-ēs, geese
Gen.	Ansēr-īs, of a goose		Ansēr-um, of geese
Dat.	Ansēr-ī, to or for a goose		Ansēr-ībūs, to or for geese
Acc.	Ansēr-em, a goose		Ansēr-ēs, geese
Voc.	Ansēr, O goose [a goose.		Ansēr-ēs, O geese
Abl.	Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from		Ansēr-ībūs, by, with, or from geese.

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Pätēr, a father		Patr-ēs, fathers
Gen.	Patr-īs, of a father		Patr-um, of fathers
Dat.	Patr-ī, to or for a father		Patr-ībūs, to or for fathers
Acc.	Patr-em, a father		Patr-ēs, fathers
Voc.	Päter, O father [father.		Patr-ēs, O fathers
Abl.	Patr-ē, by, with, or from a		Patr-ībūs, by, with, or from fathers.

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Flōs (m.), a flower		Flōr-ēs, flowers
Gen.	Flōr-īs, of a flower		Flōr-um, of flowers
Dat.	Flōr-ī, to or for a flower		Flōr-ībūs, to or for flowers
Acc.	Flōr-em, a flower		Flōr-ēs, flowers
Voc.	Flōs, O flower [flower.		Flōr-ēs, O flowers
Abl.	Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a		Flōr-ībūs, by, with, or from flowers.

Examples for Declension.

sōl (m.),	sōl-is,	the sun.	aggēr (m.),	aggēr-is,	a mound.
exsūl (c.),	exsūl-is,	an exile.	carcēr (m.),	carcēr-is,	a prison.
cōlōr (m.),	cōlōr-is,	colour.	mūliēr,	mūliēr-is,	a woman.
tīmōr (m.),	tīmōr-is,	fear.	mātēr,	mātr-is,	a mother.
mōs (m.),	mōr-is,	a custom	frātēr,	frātr-is,	a brother.

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in ēr, the ŷ is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as päter, māter, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows. as, *Stem* and *Nom.* flōs, *Gen.* flōr-is: *Stem* and *Nom.* pulvis, *Acc.*, *Gen.* pulvēr-is.

§ 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in *on*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (m.), <i>a lion</i>	Leōn-ēs,	<i>lions</i>
Gen.	Leōn-īs, <i>of a lion</i>	Leōn-um,	<i>of lions</i>
Dat.	Leōn-ī, <i>to or for a lion</i>	Leōn-ībūs,	<i>to or for lions</i>
Acc.	Leōn-em, <i>a lion</i>	Leōn-ēs,	<i>lions</i>
Voc.	Leo, <i>O lion</i> [<i>lion</i>].	Leōn-ēs,	<i>O lions</i>
Abl.	Leōn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Leōn-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgo, <i>a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ēs,	<i>maidens</i>
Gen.	Virgīn-īs, <i>of a maiden</i>	Virgīn-um,	<i>of maidens</i>
Dat.	Virgīn-ī, <i>to or for a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ībūs,	<i>to or for maidens</i>
Acc.	Virgīn-em, <i>a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ēs,	<i>maidens</i>
Voc.	Virgo, <i>O maiden</i> [<i>maiden</i>].	Virgīn-ēs,	<i>O maidens</i> [<i>maidens</i>].
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Virgīn-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

Examples for Declension.

sermo (m.), <i>sermōn-is, a discourse.</i>	hōmo (c.), <i>hōmīn-is, a man or wo-</i>
pūgio (m.), <i>pūgiōn-is, a dagger.</i>	grando (f.), <i>grandīn-is, hail. [man.]</i>
lātro (m.), <i>lātrōn-is, a robber.</i>	ordo (m.), <i>ordīn-is, a rank.</i>
praeco (m.), <i>praecōn-is, a crier.</i>	īmāgo (f.), <i>īmāgīn-is, a likeness.</i>
ōrātiō (f.), <i>ōrātiōn-is, a speech.</i>	hīrundo (f.), <i>hīrundīn-is, a swallow,</i>
pāvō (m.), <i>pāvōn-is, a peacock.</i>	ārundo (f.), <i>ārundīn-is, a reed.</i>

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in *ōn* (short), the *ō* is changed into *ī*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem virgōn, Gen. virgīn-is.* Comp. § 21, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. *Cāro* (*Stem cārōn*) *flesh*, drops the *ō* in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as, *Nom. cāro, Gen. carn-īs, Dat. carn-ī, &c.*

§ 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-īs (c.), <i>an enemy</i>	Host-ēs,	<i>enemies</i>
Gen.	Host-īs, <i>of an enemy</i>	Host-īum,	<i>of enemies</i>
Dat.	Host-ī, <i>to or for an enemy</i>	Host-ībūs,	<i>to or for enemies</i>
Acc.	Host-em, <i>an enemy</i>	Host-ēs,	<i>enemies</i>
Voc.	Host-īs, <i>O enemy</i> [<i>enemy</i>].	Host-ēs,	<i>O enemies</i> [<i>mies</i>].
Abl.	Host-ē, <i>by, with, or from an</i>	Host-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from ene-</i>

Examples for Declension.

cīvis (c.), <i>a citizen.</i>	ōvis (f.), <i>a sheep.</i>	vestīs (f.), <i>a garment</i>
āvīs (f.), <i>a bird.</i>	fēlls (f.), <i>a cat.</i>	classīs (f.), <i>a fleet.</i>

Some Stems end in *i* or *e*. and are thus declined:—

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Nüb-ēs, <i>a cloud</i>	Nüb-ēs,	<i>clouds</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Nüb-īs, <i>of a cloud</i>	Nüb-īum,	<i>of clouds</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Nüb-i, <i>to or for a cloud</i>	Nüb-ībūs,	<i>to or for clouds</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Nüb-em, <i>a cloud</i>	Nüb-ēs,	<i>clouds</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Nüb-ēs, <i>O cloud</i> [<i>cloud</i>]	Nüb-ēs,	<i>O clouds</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Nüb-ě, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Nüb-ībūs,	<i>by, with or from clouds.</i>

Examples for Declension.

clādēs, *a defeat.* | rūpēs, *a rock.* | sēdēs, *a scat.*

B. Neuter Substantives.

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in *ā*, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Nōmēn, <i>a name</i>	Nōmīn-ā,	<i>names</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Nōmīn-īs, <i>of a name</i>	Nōmīn-um,	<i>of names</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Nōmīn-i, <i>to or for a name</i>	Nōmīn-ībūs,	<i>to or for names</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Nōmēn, <i>a name</i>	Nōmīn-ā,	<i>names</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Nōmēn, <i>O name</i> [<i>name</i>]	Nōmīn-ā,	<i>O names</i> [<i>names</i>]
<i>Abl.</i>	Nōmīn-ě, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Nōmīn-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ā,	<i>lightnings</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Fulgūr-īs, <i>of lightning</i>	Fulgūr-um,	<i>of lightnings</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Fulgūr-i, <i>to or for lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ībūs,	<i>to or for lightnings</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ā,	<i>lightnings</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Fulgūr, <i>O lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ā,	<i>O lightnings</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Fulgūr-ě, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>	Fulgūr-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Crūs, <i>a leg</i>	Crūr-ā,	<i>legs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Crūr-īs, <i>of a leg</i>	Crūr-um,	<i>of legs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Crūr-i, <i>to or for a leg</i>	Crūr-ībūs,	<i>to or for legs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Crūs, <i>a leg</i>	Crūr-ā,	<i>legs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Crūs, <i>O leg</i> [<i>leg</i>]	Crūr-ā,	<i>O legs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Crūr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Crūr-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from legs.</i>

Sing.		4.	Plur.
Nom.	ŏpūs, a work	ŏpēr-ā,	works
Gen.	ŏpēr-is, of a work	ŏpēr um,	of works
Dat.	ŏpēr-i, to or for a work	ŏpēr-ībūs,	to or for works
Acc.	ŏpūs, a work	ŏpēr-ā,	works
Voc.	ŏpūs, O work [work.	ŏpēr-ā,	O works
Abl.	ŏpēr-ě, by, with, or from a	ŏpēr-ībūs,	by, with, or from works.

Sing.		5.	Plur.
Nom.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Gen.	Corpōr-is, of a body	Corpōr-um,	of bodies
Dat.	Corpōr-i, to or for a body	Corpōr-ībūs,	to or for bodies
Acc.	Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā,	bodies
Voc.	Corpūs, O body [body.	Corpōr-ā,	O bodies [bodies.
Abl.	Corpōr-ě, by, with or from a	Corpōr-ībūs,	by, with, or from

Sing.		6.	Plur.
Nom.	Căpūt, a head	Căpīt-ā,	heads
Gen.	Căpīt-is, of a head	Căpīt um,	of heads
Dat.	Căpīt-i, to or for a head	Căpīt-ībūs,	to or for heads
Acc.	Căpūt, a head	Căpīt-ā,	heads
Voc.	Căpūt, O head [head.	Căpīt-ā,	O heads
Abl.	Căpīt-ě, by, with, or from a	Căpīt-ībūs,	by, with, or from heads.

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, flāmēn, inis (*m.*), a special priest; Věnūs, ěris, the goddess of love; lěpūs, ěris (*m.*), a hare.

Examples for Declension.

flāmēn,	inis,	a river.	fünūs,	ěris,	a funeral
carmēn,	inis,	a song.	lătūs,	ěris,	a side.
fulmēn,	inis,	a thunderbolt.	sidūs,	ěris,	a constellation.
sēmēn,	inis,	a seed.	vulnūs,	ěris,	a wound.
murmūr,	ěris,	a murmur.	littūs,	ŏris,	a s ^t ore.
guttūr,	ěris,	a throat.	pignūs,	ŏris,	a pledge.
ŏs,	ŏris,	a mouth.	tempūs,	ŏris,	a time.
gěnūs,	ěris,	a race.	němūs,	ŏris,	a grove.
foedūs,	ěris,	a treaty	pectūs,	ŏris,	a breast.

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of -erūs-is; ŏpēs, ŏpēr-is, instead of ŏpēs-is; corpōs, corpōr-is, instead of corpōs-is.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ūs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only an euphonic change of the *ě* and *ŏ* of the Stem: as, Stems ŏpēs, corpōs; *Nom.* ŏpūs, corpūs.

Obs. 3. In căpūt, căpīt-is, the *ě* of the Stem is changed into *ĵ* when another syllable follows, like the *ě* in nŏmēn, nŏmĵn-is. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e*, *al*, *ar*).

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Mār-īs, <i>of the sea</i>	Mār-ium,	<i>of seas</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Mār-i, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Mār-ībūs,	<i>to or for seas</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā,	<i>seas</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Mār ē, <i>O sea</i>	[<i>sea.</i> Mār-īā,	<i>O seas</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Mār-i, <i>by, with, or from the</i>	Mār-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from seas.</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ānīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Ānīmāl-īā,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Ānīmāl-īs, <i>of an animal</i>	Ānīmāl-ium,	<i>of animals</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Ānīmāl-i, <i>to or for an animal</i>	Ānīmāl-ībūs,	<i>to or for animals</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ānīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Ānīmāl-īā,	<i>animals</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Ānīmāl, <i>O animal</i>	Ānīmāl-īē,	<i>O animals</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Ānīmāl-i, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Ānīmāl-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from animals.</i>

Examples for Declension.

rētē, <i>a net.</i>	mōnīlē, <i>a necklace.</i>	cervicāl, <i>a pillow.</i>
ōvilē, <i>a sheepfold.</i>	vectīgāl, <i>a tax.</i>	calcār, <i>a spur.</i>

Obs. 1. The Stems of *mārē* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ē* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i*: as, *Stem* māri, *Nom.* mārē.

Obs. 2. The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *āl* and *ār*, end in *āi* and *āri*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the *Nom. Sing.*: as, *Stem* ānīmāli, *Nom.* ānīmāl; *Stem* calcāri, *Nom.* calcār. Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 31, 32.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined :

Bōs (c.), <i>an ox or cow.</i>		Ītēr, <i>a journey.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Bōs	Bōv-ēs	Ītēr	Ītēr-ē
<i>Gen.</i> Bōv-īs	Bōv-um or bō-um	Ītēr-īs	Ītēr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Bōv-i	Bō-būs or bū-būs	Ītēr-i	Ītēr-ībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Bōv-em	Bōv-ēs	Ītēr	Ītēr-ē
<i>Voc.</i> Bōs	Bōv-ēs	Ītēr	Ītēr-ē
<i>Abl.</i> Bōv-ē	Bō-būs or būbūs.	Ītēr-ē	Ītēr-ībūs.

Sēnex, <i>an old man.</i>		Jūptēr (=Jōv-pītēr, <i>i. e. pātēr</i>), <i>the god.</i>		Vīs (f.) <i>strength.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Jūptēr	Jūptēr	Vīs	Virēs
<i>Gen.</i> Sēn-īs	Sēn-um	Jōv-īs	Jōv-īs	Vīs	Virium
<i>Dat.</i> Sēn-i	Sēn-ībūs	Jōv-i	Jōv-i	VI	Virībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Sēn-em	Sēn-ēs	Jōv-em	Jōv-em	Vīm	Virēs
<i>Voc.</i> Sēnex	Sēn-ēs	Jūptēr	Jūptēr	Vīs	Virēs
<i>Abl.</i> Sēn-ē	Sēn-ībūs	Jōv-ē.	Jōv-ē.	VI	Virībūs

Jusjurandum (n.), *an oath*, is properly two words: *Gen.* jūrisjūrāndī; *Dat.* jūrjūrāndō; *Acc.* jusjūrāndum; *Voc.* jusjūrāndum; *Abl.* jūrējūrāndō.

REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 31-32. Stems in *i* have frequently the *Acc. Sing.* in *im*, the *Abi. Sing.* in *i*, and the *Acc. Pl.* in *is*. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel; as,

<i>Acc. Sing.</i>	puppi-m, like mensa-m,	grādu-m,	diē-m,
<i>Abi. Sing.</i>	puppi,	„ mensā,	grādū,
<i>Acc. Pl.</i>	puppi-s,	„ mensā-s,	grādū-s,
			diē-s.

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant.

§ 35, 36. Stems in *i* have the *Gen. Pl.* in *ium* with the following exceptions:—*jūvēnis*, a youth; *vātēs*, a prophet; *cānis*, a dog; *vōlūeris*, a bird; which have the *Gen. Pl.* *jūvēnum*, *vātum*, *cānum*, *vōlūerum*. The three words *āpis*, a bee; *mensis*, a month; *sēdēs*, a seat, have sometimes the *Gen. Pl.* in *um* as well as *ium*.

1. The following words have also the *Gen.* in *ium*, not *um*:

<i>imbēr</i> (<i>imbrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>rain.</i>	<i>Insübēr</i> (<i>Insubrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>name of a Gallic tribe.</i>
<i>ūtēr</i> (<i>utrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a bag made of leather.</i>	<i>cāro</i> (<i>carnium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>flesh.</i>
<i>lintēr</i> (<i>lintrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a wherry.</i>	<i>ventēr</i> (<i>ventrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>the belly.</i>

2. Monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants: as, *urbs*, *urb-ium*; *arx*, *are-ium*; *mons*, *mont-ium*. So also *os* (*Stem oss*), *n.*, a bone, *Gen. Pl.* *oss-ium*; as (*Stem ass*), *m.*, a small coin, *Gen. Pl.* *ass-ium*.

3. Also the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant:

<i>lis</i> (<i>litium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>a lawsuit.</i>	<i>mās</i> (<i>mārium</i>),	<i>a male.</i>
<i>glis</i> (<i>glirium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a dormouse.</i>	<i>nix</i> (<i>nivium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>snow.</i>
<i>vis</i> (<i>vīrium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>force.</i>	<i>faux</i> (<i>faucium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>the throat.</i>
<i>mūs</i> (<i>mūrium</i>), <i>m.</i>	<i>a mouse.</i>	<i>strix</i> (<i>strigium</i>), <i>f.</i>	<i>an owl.</i>

Obs. The *Nom.* *faux* is not used.

§ 38-45. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. See § 20.

Examples.

	Sing.		Sing.		Sing.
<i>Nom.</i>	Pēriclēs		Pallas		Pārīs
<i>Gen.</i>	Pēriclīs, Pēriclī		Pallādīs, Pallādos		Pārīdīs, Pārīdōs
<i>Dat.</i>	Pēricli		Pallādī		Pārīdī
<i>Acc.</i>	Pēriclem, Pēriclē		Pallādem, Pallādā		Pārīdem, Pārīdā, Pārīn
<i>Voc.</i>	Pēriclēs, Pēriclēs,		Pallas		Pārī
<i>Abi.</i>	Pēriclē. [Pēriclē		Pallādē.		Pārīdē.
	Sing.		Sing.		Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Sapphō		chlāmŷs, a cloak.		chlāmŷdēs or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Sapphūs, Sapphōnīs		chlāmŷdīs, chlāmŷdōs		chlāmŷdum
<i>Dat.</i>	Sapphō, Sapphōnī		chlāmŷdī		chlāmŷdībūs
<i>Acc.</i>	Sapphō, Sapphōnem		chlāmŷdem, chlāmŷdā		chlāmŷdēs, chlāmŷdās
<i>Voc.</i>	Sapphō				
<i>Abi.</i>	Sapphōnē.		chlāmŷdē.		chlāmŷdībūs.

CHAPTER VII.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Grād-ūs, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
Gen.	Grād-ūs, <i>of a step</i>	Grād-uum,	<i>of steps</i>
Dat.	Grād-uī, <i>to or for a step</i>	Grād-ībūs,	<i>to or for steps</i>
Acc.	Grād-um, <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
Voc.	Grād-ūs, <i>O step</i>	[<i>step.</i>]	Grād-ūs, <i>O steps</i>
Abl.	Grād-ū, <i>by, with, or from a</i>		Grād-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from steps.</i>

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Gěn-u, <i>a knee</i>	Gěn-ŭă,	<i>knees</i>
Gen.	Gěn-ūs, <i>of a knee</i>	Gěn-ŭum,	<i>of knees</i>
Dat.	Gěn-ŭ, <i>to or for a knee</i>	Gěn-ībūs,	<i>to or for knees</i>
Acc.	Gěn-u, <i>a knee</i>	Gěn-ŭă,	<i>knees</i>
Voc.	Gěn-u, <i>O knee</i>	[<i>knee.</i>]	Gěn-ŭă, <i>O knees</i>
Abl.	Gěn-ŭ, <i>by, with, or from a</i>		Gěn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

GENDER.—Substantives in *us* of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

Examples for Declension.

Masculine.

fructus, <i>fruit.</i>		mōtus, <i>a movement.</i>		passus, <i>a pace.</i>
currus, <i>a chariot.</i>		ŭsus, <i>a use.</i>		cursus, <i>a running.</i>
sensus, <i>a sense.</i>		cāsus, <i>a fall.</i>		cantus, <i>a song.</i>

Feminine.

mānus, <i>a hand.</i>		nŭrus,	<i>a daughter-in-law.</i>
trĭbus, <i>a tribe (a division of the</i>		socrus,	<i>a mother-in-law.</i>
ăcus, <i>a needle. [Roman people].</i>		ănus,	<i>an old-woman.</i>
portŭcus, <i>a portico.</i>		idus (<i>pl.</i>),	<i>the Ides (a division of the</i>
đōmus, <i>a house.</i>			<i>Roman month).</i>

Neuter.

cornu, <i>a horn.</i>		vĕru,	<i>a spit.</i>
-----------------------	--	-------	----------------

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.

Obs. 2. The Gen. Sing. *ūs* is a contraction of *uŭs*: as, grādūs from grādūus.

Obs. 3. The Dat. Sing. *uī* is often contracted into *ŭ*: as, grādūl, grādŭ.

Obs. 4. The Dat. and Abl. Plur. of the following words end in *ībūs*, but portus and vĕru have also *ībūs*:—

quercus, also âcus,
arcus, vĕru, lâcus,
spĕcus, trĭbus, artus,
portus, pĕcu, parŭus.

quercus (f.), <i>an oak.</i>	lācus (m.), <i>a lake, tank.</i>	artus (m.), <i>a joint.</i>
šcus (f.), <i>a needle.</i>	spēcus (m. f. & n.) } <i>a cave.</i>	portus (m.), <i>a harbour</i>
arcus (m.), <i>a bow.</i>		pěcu (n.), <i>cattle.</i>
věru (n.), <i>a spit.</i>	trībus (f.), <i>a tribe.</i>	partus (m.), <i>a birth.</i>

Obs. 5. Dōmus, *a house*, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
Gen. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūum or dōm-ōrum
Dat. Dōm-ūī	Dōm-ībūs
Acc. Dōm-um	Dōm-ōs (<i>rarely dōm-ūs</i>)
Voc. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
Abl. Dōm-ō	Dōm-ībūs.

Hence the memorial line :

Tollě mě, mū, mī, mīs,
SI declīnārě dōmus vīs.

i. e. leave out the endings *mě, mū, mī, mīs*, if you wish to decline *dōmūs*.

Dōmī is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.

CHAPTER VIII.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

Sing.	Plur
Nom. Dī-ēs, <i>a day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>days</i>
Gen. Dī-ēī, <i>of a day</i>	Dī-ērum, <i>of days</i>
Dat. Dī-ēī, <i>to or for a day</i>	Dī-ēbūs, <i>to or for days</i>
Acc. Dī-em, <i>a day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>days</i>
Voc. Dī-ēs, <i>O day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>O days</i>
Abl. Dī-ē, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Dī-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from days.</i>

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine : excepting *dies*, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine : also *meridies* (m.), *noon*, which is a compound of *dies*.

Examples for Declension.

rēs, <i>a thing.</i>	effygiēs, <i>a likeness.</i>	spēcīēs, <i>appearance.</i>
šciēs, <i>a point.</i>	fīdēs, <i>faith.</i>	spēs, <i>hope.</i>
fāciēs, <i>a face.</i>	sēriēs, <i>a series.</i>	mēridies (m.), <i>noon.</i>

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in *ei* is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant : as, *dī-ēī, fāci-ēī*; but, *rēī, fīdēī*.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ī*. as, *dīē, fīdē*.

Obs. 4. *Rēs* and *dīēs* are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural.

CHAPTER IX.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, *fās*, *permitted by divine law*; *nēfās*, *opposed to divine law*; *nīhīl*, *nothing*; *instār*, *resemblance*.

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, *justītia*, *justice*; *fāmēs*, *hunger*; *aurum*, *gold*.

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, *nuptiæ*, *a marriage*; *fēriæ*, *holidays*; *tēnebræ*, *darkness*; *libērī*, *children*; *armæ*, *arms*.

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>Aedēs</i> ,	<i>a temple</i> ;	<i>aedēs</i> ,	<i>a house</i> .
<i>Āqua</i> ,	<i>water</i> ;	<i>āquæ</i> ,	<i>medicinal springs</i> .
<i>Auxīlium</i> ,	<i>help</i> ;	<i>auxīlia</i> ,	<i>auxiliary forces</i> .
<i>Carcēr</i> ,	<i>a prison</i> ;	<i>carcērēs</i> ,	<i>a starting-place</i> .
<i>Castrum</i> ,	<i>a fort</i> ;	<i>castrā</i> ,	<i>a camp</i> .
<i>Cōmītiūm</i> ,	<i>the place of Assembly</i> ;	<i>Cōmītiā</i> ,	<i>the Assembly itself</i> .
<i>Cōpia</i> ,	<i>plenty</i> ;	<i>cōpiæ</i> ,	<i>forces</i> .
<i>Fortūna</i> ,	<i>fortune</i> ;	<i>fortūnae</i> ,	<i>the gifts of fortune</i> ,
<i>Grātia</i> ,	<i>favour</i> ;	<i>grātiæ</i> ,	<i>thanks</i> . [property.]
<i>Impēdimentum</i> ,	<i>a hindrance</i> ;	<i>impēdimentā</i> ,	<i>baggage</i> .
<i>Littēra</i> ,	<i>a letter of the alpha-</i>	<i>littērae</i> ,	<i>an epistle</i> .
<i>Lūdus</i> ,	<i>play, school</i> ; [bet;	<i>lūdī</i> ,	<i>public games</i> .
<i>Ōpēra</i> ,	<i>exertion</i> ;	<i>ōpērae</i> ,	<i>workmen</i> .
<i>Ōpis</i> (Gen.),	<i>help</i> ;	<i>ōpēs</i> ,	<i>power, wealth</i> .
<i>Pars</i> ,	<i>a portion</i> ;	<i>partes</i> ,	<i>a part in a play</i> .
<i>Rostrum</i> ,	<i>a beak</i> ;	<i>rostrā</i> ,	<i>the platform for speak-</i> <i>ers in the Roman fo-</i> <i>rum (adorned with</i> <i>the beaks of ships)</i> .
<i>Tābūla</i> ,	<i>a board, picture</i> ;	<i>tābūlae</i> ,	<i>writing tablets</i> .

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases: as,

fors (*f.*), *chance*. Only *Nom.* and *Abl. Sing.* *fortē* (without Plural).

(ops) ōpis (*f.*), *help*. Only *Gen., Acc., Abl., Sing.* *ōpis, ōpem, ōpē*. Full Plural.

(prex, prēcīs) (*f.*), *prayer*. Only *Dat., Acc., and Abl. Sing.* Full Plural.

(vīels), *change*. Only *Gen., Acc., Abl. Sing.* *vīels, vīcem, vīcē*. Full Plural, except *Gen.*

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Hētērōclitā*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: as, *dōmus*, *a house* (see § 46, *Obs.* 5); *laurus*, *a bay-tree*; *cūpressus*, *a cypress*; *ficus*, *a fig-tree*; *pīnus*, *a pine-tree*.
2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, *plebs*, *plēbis*, and *plēbēs*, *plēbēī*, *the commonalty*.
3. *Jūgērūm*, *an acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.*: as, *jūgērā, jūgērūm, jūgērībūs*. *Vās, vāsīs, a vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Second in the Plural: as *vāsū, vāsōrum, vāsīs*.

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Hëtërogënëă*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural

Sing.		Plur.
jöcus (m.),	a joke.	jöci (m.), jöcă (n.)
löcus (m.),	a place.	löci (m.), löcă (n.)
carbăsus (f.),	fine linen.	carbăssä (n.), saills.
coelum (n.),	heaven.	coeli (m.) (rare).
frënum (n.),	a bit.	frëni (m.), frënä (n.)
Tartărus (m.),	the infernal regions.	Tartără (n.)
rastrum (n.),	a rake.	rastri (m.), rastră (n.)

CHAPTER X.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in *üs, ä, um, or ër, ä, um*, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: as, *bönüs, bönä, bönüm, good; nigrë, nigrä, nigrum, black; tënë, tënë, tënërum, tender.*

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Bön-üs	bön-ä	bön-um	Bön-ï	bön-ae	bön-ä	
<i>Gen.</i>	Bön-ï	bön-ae	bön-ï	Bön-örum	bön-ärum	bön-örum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Bön-ö	bön-ae	bön-ö	Bön-ïis	bön-ïis	bön-ïis	
<i>Acc.</i>	Bön-um	bön-am	bön-um	Bön-ös	bön-äs	bön-ä	
<i>Voc.</i>	Bön-ë	bön-ä	bön-um	Bön-ï	bön-ae	bön-ä	
<i>Abl.</i>	Bön-ö	bön-ä	bön-ö	Bön-ïis	bön-ïis	bön-ïis	

	Sing.			2.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Nigr-ër	nigr-ä	nigr-um	Nigr-ï	nigr-ae	nigr-ä	
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-ï	nigr-ae	nigr-ï	Nigr-örum	nigr-ärum	nigr-örum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-ö	nigr-ae	nigr-ö	Nigr-ïis	nigr-ïis	nigr-ïis	
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ös	nigr-äs	nigr-ä	
<i>Voc.</i>	Nigr-ër	nigr-ä	nigr-um	Nigr-ï	nigr-ae	nigr-ä	
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-ö	nigr-ä	nigr-ö	Nigr-ïis	nigr-ïis	nigr-ïis	

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă	
<i>Gen.</i>	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	
<i>Acc.</i>	Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă	
<i>Voc.</i>	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă	
<i>Abl.</i>	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	

Examples for Declension.

mălus,	a,	um,	<i>bad.</i>	sŭperbus,	a,	um,	<i>proud.</i>
cărus,	a,	um,	<i>dear.</i>	săcer,	cra,	rum,	<i>sacred.</i>
clărus,	a,	um,	<i>bright.</i>	aeger,	gra,	rum,	<i>sick.</i>
plĕnus,	a,	um,	<i>full.</i>	măcer,	cra,	rum,	<i>lean.</i>
ălbus,	a,	um,	<i>white.</i>	pu.cher,	chra,	rum,	<i>beautiful.</i>
magnus,	a,	um,	<i>great.</i>	rŭber,	bra,	rum,	<i>red.</i>
parvus,	a,	um,	<i>little.</i>	sinister,	tra,	rum,	<i>left.</i>

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like tĕnĕr are the following:—

asper, ěra, ěrum,	<i>rough.</i>	liber, ěra, ěrum,	<i>free.</i>
lăcer, ěra, ěrum,	<i>torn.</i>	miser, ěra, ěrum,	<i>wretched.</i>
prosper, ěra, ěrum,	<i>prosperous.</i>		

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: as,

lanĭger, ěra, ěrum, *wool-bearing.* | ōpifer, ěra, ěrum, *help-bringing.*

All other Adjectives in ěr drop the ě, and are declined like nĭger.

Dextĕr is declined in both ways, *dextĕră* and *dextră*, *dextĕrum* and *dextrum*.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in ũr, sătŭr, sătŭră, sătŭrum, *full of food, sated.*

§ 57. Irregular Declension in *us, a, um,* and *er, a, um.*

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

ŭnŭs, sŏlŭs, tŏtŭs, ullŭs,
ŭtĕr, neutĕr, altĕr, nullŭs,
and Ăllŭs,

have in the Genitive Sing. *ius* and in the Dative *i*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ull-ŭs	ull-ă	ull-um	Ŭt-ĕr	utr-ă	utr-am
<i>Gen.</i>	Ull-ĭŭs			Utr-ĭŭs		
<i>Dat.</i>	Ull-ĭ			Utr-ĭ		
<i>Acc.</i>	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
<i>Abl.</i>	Ull-ŏ	ull-ă	ull-ŏ	Utr-ŏ	utr-ă	utr-ŏ

ŭnus, <i>one.</i>	ullus, <i>any.</i>	neuter, <i>neither of two.</i>
sŏlus, <i>alone.</i>	nullus, <i>none.</i>	alter, <i>one of two.</i>
tŏtus, <i>whole.</i>	ŭter, <i>which of two.</i>	Ăllus, <i>one of any number, another.</i>

Obs. 1. In prose the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is always long, except in *altĕrĭŭs*. The Gen. *Ăllŭs* is a contraction of *Ăll-ĭŭs*, and therefore always *long*. In the other words the *i* in the Gen. *ius* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of ŭtĕr are declined in the same way: as, ŭterquĕ, ŭtervis, ŭterlibĕt, ŭterouquĕ; *Gen.* *utriusque, utriusvis, etc.*

§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in *er*, *ris*, *re*, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: as, *ācēr*, *ācrīs*, *ācrē*, *sharp*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Acēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>	<i>Acrēs</i>	<i>ācriā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Acrīs</i>		—	<i>Acrium</i>	—
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acī</i>		—	<i>Acībūs</i>	—
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Acrem</i>		<i>ācrē</i>	<i>Acrēs</i>	<i>ācriā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Acēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>	<i>Acrēs</i>	<i>ācriā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Acī</i>		—	<i>Acībūs</i>	—

Obs. The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

ācer, *ālācer*, *campester*,
cēler, *cēlēber*, *ēquester*,
pūter, *vōlūcer*, *terrester*,
pāluster, *pēdester*,
sālūber, *silvester*.

<i>ālācer</i> ,	<i>lively.</i>	<i>vōlūcer</i> ,	<i>winged.</i>
<i>campester</i> ,	<i>level.</i>	<i>terrester</i> ,	<i>pertaining to the earth.</i>
<i>cēler</i> ,	<i>quick.</i>	<i>pāluster</i> ,	<i>marshy.</i>
<i>cēlēber</i> ,	<i>crowded.</i>	<i>pēdester</i> ,	<i>pedestrian.</i>
<i>ēquester</i> ,	<i>equestrian.</i>	<i>sālūber</i> ,	<i>healthful.</i>
<i>pūter</i> ,	<i>rotten.</i>	<i>silvester</i> ,	<i>woody.</i>

Obs. 1. *Cēler*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē* is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r*. *Cēler* has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.*

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *tristīs*, *tristē*, *sad*; *altior*, *altius*, *higher* (§ 63).

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Trist-īs</i>	<i>trist-ē</i>	<i>Trist-ēs</i>	<i>trist-iā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Trist-īs</i>	—	<i>Trist-ium</i>	—
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Trist-i</i>	—	<i>Trist-ībūs</i>	—
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Trist-em</i>	<i>trist-ē</i>	<i>Trist-ēs</i>	<i>trist-iā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Trist-īs</i>	<i>trist-ē</i>	<i>Trist-ēs</i>	<i>trist-iā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Trist-i</i>	—	<i>Trist-ībūs</i>	—

Examples for Declension.

<i>lēvis</i> ,	<i>light.</i>	<i>brēvis</i> ,	<i>short.</i>	<i>mollis</i> ,	<i>soft.</i>
<i>lēvis</i> ,	<i>smooth.</i>	<i>fortis</i> ,	<i>brave.</i>	<i>fācilis</i> ,	<i>easy.</i>
<i>grāvis</i> ,	<i>heavy.</i>	<i>turpis</i> ,	<i>disgraceful.</i>	<i>vīlis</i> ,	<i>cheap.</i>
<i>dulcis</i> ,	<i>sweet.</i>	<i>simīlis</i> ,	<i>like.</i>	<i>hūmīlis</i> ,	<i>low.</i>

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *fēlix, fortunate*; *prūdēns, prudent*.

	Sing.		1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Fēlix	fēlix		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iǎ
<i>Gen.</i>	Fēlic-īs	—		Fēlic-ium	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Fēlic-ī	—		Fēlic-ībūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Fēlic-em	fēlix		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iǎ
<i>Voc.</i>	Fēlix	—		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-iǎ
<i>Abl.</i>	Fēlic-ī or ě	—		Fēlic-ībūs	—

	Sing.		2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Prūdēns	prūdēns		Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iǎ
<i>Gen.</i>	Prūdēt-īs	—		Prūdēt-ium	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Prūdēt-ī	—		Prūdēt-ībūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Prūdēt-em	prūdēns		Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iǎ
<i>Voc.</i>	Prūdēns	—		Prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-iǎ
<i>Abl.</i>	Prūdēt-ī or ě	—		Prūdēt-ībūs	—

Examples for Declension.

<i>audax,</i>	<i>ācis,</i>	<i>bold.</i>		<i>pōtēns,</i>	<i>entis,</i>	<i>powerful.</i>
<i>vērax,</i>	<i>ācis,</i>	<i>truthful.</i>		<i>ingēns,</i>	<i>entis,</i>	<i>huge.</i>
<i>lōquax,</i>	<i>ācis,</i>	<i>talkative.</i>		<i>diligēns,</i>	<i>entis,</i>	<i>diligent.</i>
<i>vēlox,</i>	<i>ōcis,</i>	<i>swift.</i>		<i>sāplēns,</i>	<i>entis,</i>	<i>wise.</i>
<i>fērox,</i>	<i>ōcis,</i>	<i>haughty.</i>		<i>praesēns,</i>	<i>entis,</i>	<i>present.</i>

Obs. 1. On the *Abl. Sing.*, see §§ 31, 32. On the *Gen. Plur.* in *um*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. *DIVēs, dīvītīs, rich*, has a contracted form: *Nom. dīs, dītē*; *Gen. dīt-īs, &c.*; *Nom. Plur. Neut. dītīǎ*.

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, *nēq̄iam, worthless*; *frūgl, honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): as, *frūgl hōmō, frūgl hōmīnem*.

CHAPTER XI.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>altīs, high.</i>	<i>altiōr, higher.</i>	<i>altissīmūs, highest.</i>

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the Superlative by adding *issīmūs*, to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: as,

	<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Nom.	Stem.			
altūs,	alto,	high,	alt-iōr,	alt-issīmūs.
lēvīs,	lēvi,	light,	lēv-iōr,	lēv-issīmūs.
fēlix,	fēlic,	fortunate,	fēlic-iōr,	fēlic-issīmūs.
prūdēns,	prūdēt,	prudent,	prūdēt-iōr,	prūdēt-issīmūs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having *ior* in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows :

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Altiōr	altiūs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Altiōr-īs	—	Altiōr-um	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Altiōr-i	—	Altiōr-ībūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Altiōr-em	altiūs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Altiōr	altiūs	Altiōr-ēs	altiōr-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Altiōr-ē rarely -ī	—	Altiōr-ībūs	—

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, *us*, *a*, *um*: *as*, *altissīmūs*, *altissimā*, *altissimum*.

§ 65. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: *as*,

	<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
	pulchēr,	beautiful,	pulchr-iōr,	pulchr-rīmūs.
	libēr,	free,	libēr-iōr,	libēr-rīmūs.
	ācēr,	sharp,	ācēr-iōr,	ācēr-rīmūs.
	cēlēr,	swift,	cēlēr-iōr,	cēlēr-rīmūs.

Also *vētūs* (*Gen.* *vētēr-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vētēr-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*: *as*,

	<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
	fācilīs,	easy,	fācil-iōr,	fācil-līmūs.
	difficilīs,	difficult,	difficil-iōr,	difficil-līmūs.
	sīmilīs,	like,	sīmil-iōr,	sīmil-līmūs.
	dissīmilīs,	unlike,	dissīmil-iōr,	dissīmil-līmūs.
	grācilīs,	thin,	grācil-iōr,	grācil-līmūs.
	hūmilīs,	low,	hūmil-iōr,	hūmil-līmūs.

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in *-dicūs*, *-ficūs*, and *-vōlūs* (derived from the verbs *dīco*, *fācio*, and *vōlo*) form their Comparatives in *entiōr*, and their Superlatives in *entissīmūs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): *as*,

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
mälēdicūs,	<i>slanderous,</i>	mälēdicentiōr,	mälēdicentissimūs.
bēnēficūs,	<i>beneficent,</i>	bēnēficentiōr,	bēnēficentissimūs.
bēnēvōlūs,	<i>benevolent,</i>	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissimūs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most*: as, *noxiūs*, *hurtful*, *māgis noxiūs*, *more hurtful*, *maximē noxiūs*, *most hurtful*.

§ 66. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

<i>Posit.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bōnūs,	<i>good,</i>	mēliōr,	optimūs
mālūs,	<i>bad,</i>	pējōr,	peccimūs
magnūs,	<i>great,</i>	mājōr,	maximūs
parvūs,	<i>small,</i>	mīnōr,	mīnimūs
multūs,	<i>much,</i>	plūs (<i>pl. plūres, plūra</i>),	plūrimūs
nēquam,	<i>worthless,</i>	nēquiōr,	nēquissimūs
frūgi (<i>indecl.</i>)	<i>frugal,</i>	frūgālior,	frūgālistimūs.

Obs. 1. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
jūvēnīs, <i>young,</i>	jūniōr	(<i>mīnimus natu</i>)
sēnex, <i>old,</i>	sēniōr	(<i>maximus natu</i>)
—	dētēriōr, <i>worse,</i>	dētērimūs
—	ōciōr, <i>swifter,</i>	ōcissimūs
—	priōr, <i>former,</i>	primūs, <i>first</i>
nōvūs, <i>new,</i>	—	nōvissimūs.

Obs. 2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
(<i>citrā, on this side</i>),	cītēriōr, <i>more on this side,</i>	cītīmūs, <i>most on this side.</i>
(<i>ultrā, on the farther side</i>),	ultēriōr, <i>farther,</i>	ultīmūs, <i>farthest.</i>
(<i>extrā, on the outside, with-</i>	extēriōr, <i>outer,</i>	extrēmūs, <i>outermost.</i>
(<i>infrā, below</i>),	[<i>out</i>], infēriōr, <i>lower,</i>	infīmūs (<i>imus</i>), <i>lowest.</i>
(<i>intrā, within</i>),	intēriōr, <i>inner,</i>	intīmūs, <i>or imūs, innermost.</i>
(<i>prōpē, near</i>),	prōpiōr, <i>nearer,</i>	proximūs, <i>nearest.</i>
(<i>post, after</i>),	postēriōr, <i>later,</i>	postrēmūs, <i>last.</i>
(<i>suprā, above</i>),	sūpēriōr, <i>upper,</i>	suprēmūs, <i>or summus, uppermost.</i>

Note.—*Infērus* is used only in *Infērum Mārē*, *the Lower Sea*, i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural *Infēri*, *ae*, *ā*, *belonging to the lower world*. *Sūpērus* is used only in *Sūpērum Mārē*, *the Upper Sea*, i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural *Sūpēri*, *ae*, *ā*, *belonging to the upper world*.

CHAPTER XII.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote numbers simply or absolutely : as, ūnūs, *one* ; duo, *two* ; trēs, *three*.

§ 68. Unus, ūna, ūnum, is declined like ullus. See § 57.

Obs. Unus is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning : as, ūnă castră, *one camp* ; ūnae aedēs, *one house*.

Duo and Trēs are declined as follows :

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trēs	triă
<i>Gen.</i>	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	—
<i>Dat.</i>	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—
<i>Acc.</i>	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs or tris	triă
<i>Abl.</i>	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—

Obs. Ambo, *both*, is declined like duo.

§ 69. The *Cardinal Numerals* from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, aē, ā, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millē, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective ; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive : as, *Nom.* milliă, *Gen.* millium, *Dat.* millībūs, *Acc.* milliă, *Abl.* millībūs.

Obs. 1. In the Plural milliă is regularly followed by the Genitive : as, triă milliă hōmīnum, *three thousand men*. But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used : as, triă milliă trēcentī hōmīnēs, *three thousand three hundred men*.

Obs. 2. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et* : as, viginti ūnūs, or ūnūs et viginti, *twenty-one*. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first : as, centum et sexăgintă sex, or centum sexăgintă sex, *one hundred and sixty-six*.

Obs. 3. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., have the smaller numeral first with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction : as, duodēviginti, undēviginti, &c.

§ 70. *Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series ; and hence they have a relative signification : as, prīmūs, *first* ; sēcundūs or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives ; see § 56.

Obs. Dates of years are expressed by annūs with the ordinal numeral : as, annūs millēsīmūs octingentēsīmūs sexăgēsīmūs prīmūs, *the year 1861*.

§ 71. *Distributive Numerals* denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit ; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways : as, bīnī, *two each, two together, two by two*.

§ 72. *Numeral Adverbs* denote the number of times that anything happens or is done : as, sēmēl, *once* ; bis, *twice* ; tēr, *three times*.

§ 73. NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	I	ūnus	primus	singŭlī	sēmēl.
2	II	duo	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bini	bis.
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trīnī	tēr.
4	IV	quattuor, quattuor	quartus	quāternī	quātēr.
5	V	quinquē	quintus	quini	quinquies.
6	VI	sex	sextus	senī	sexies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septēnī	septies.
8	VIII	octo	octāvus	octōnī	octies.
9	IX	nōvem	nōvus	nōvēnī	nōvies.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus	dēnī	dēcies.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus	undēnī	undēcies.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	duōdēnī	duōdēcies.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus	ternī dēnī	terdēcies <i>or</i> trēdēcies.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus	quāternī dēnī	quattuordēcies.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus	quini dēnī	quindēcies.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus	senī dēnī	sēdēcies.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus	septēnī dēnī	septiesdēcies.
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicesimus	duōdēvicēnī	duōdēviciēs.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicesimus	undēvicēnī	undēviciēs.
20	XX	vigintī	vicesimus	vicēnī	viciēs.
21	XXI	{ ūnus et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī ūnus	{ primus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus primus	{ vicēnī singŭlī	{ sēmēl et viciēs.
22	XXII	{ duo et vigintī <i>or</i> vigintī duo	{ alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter	{ vicēnī bini	{ bis et viciēs.

23	XXIII	{	trēs et vīgintī	or	{	tertius et vicēsīmus,	or	viċēni termi	tēr et vicīcā.
28	XXVIII		vīgintī trēs			vicēsīmus tertius		duōdētrīcēni	duōdētrīcīcās.
29	XXIX		duōdētrīgintā			undētrīgēsimus		undētrīcēni	undētrīcīcās.
30	XXX		trīgintā			trīgēsimus		trīcēni	trīcīcās.
40	XL		quadrāgintā			quadrāgēsimus		quadrāgēni	quadrāgīcās.
50	L		quīnquāgintā			quīnquāgēsimus		quīnquāgēni	quīnquāgīcās.
60	LX		sexāgintā			sexāgēsimus		sexāgēni	sexāgīcās.
70	LXX		septuāgintā			septuāgēsimus		septuāgēni	septuāgīcās.
80	LXXX		octōgintā			octōgēsimus		octōgēni	octōgīcās.
90	XC		nōnāgintā			nōnāgēsimus		nōnāgēni	nōnāgīcās.
100	C		centum			centēsīmus		centēni	centīcās.
200	CC		dūcentī			dūcentēsīmus		dūcēni	dūcentīcās.
300	CCC		trēcentī			trēcentēsīmus		trēcēni	trēcentīcās.
400	CCCC		quadrīngentī			quadrīngentēsīmus		quadrīngēni	quadrīngentīcās.
500	D or I ^o		quīngentī			quīngentēsīmus		quīngēni	quīngentīcās.
600	DC		sexcentī			sexcentēsīmus		sexcēni	sexcentīcās.
700	DCC		septīngentī			septīngentēsīmus		septīngēni	septīngentīcās.
800	DCCC		octīngentī			octīngentēsīmus		octīngēni	octīngentīcās.
900	DCCCC		nongentī			nongentēsīmus		nongēni	nongentīcās.
1000	M or CI ^o		mille			millēsīmus		singulā millīā	millīcās.
2000	MM		duō millīā			bis millēsīmus		binā millīā	bīs millīcās.
5000	I ^{oo}		quīnquē millīā			quīnquēs millēsīmus		quīnā millīā	quīnquēs millīcās.
10,000	CCI ^{oo}		dēcem millīā			dēcīcās millēsīmus		dēnā millīā	dēcīcās millīcās.
50,000	I ^{ooo}		quīnquāgintā millīā			quīnquāgēs millēsīmus		quīnquāgēnā millīā	quīnquāgēs millīcās.
100,000	CCI ^{ooo}		centum millīā			centēs millēsīmus		centēnā millīā	centēs millīcās.
500,000	I ^{oooo}		quīngentā millīā			quīngentēs millēsīmus		quīngēnā millīā	quīngentēs millīcās.
1 000,000	CCCCI ^{oooo}		dēcīcās centum millīā			dēcīcās millēsīmus		dēcīcās centā millīā	dēcīcās centēs millīcās.

CHAPTER XIII.—THE PRONOUNS.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are :

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

§ 75. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

		Sing.			Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ēgō,	<i>I</i>	Nōs,		<i>we</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Meī,	<i>of me</i>	Nostrī and nostrum,		<i>of us</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Mīhi,	<i>to or for me</i>	Nōbīs,		<i>to or for us</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Mē,	<i>me</i>	Nōs,		<i>us</i> [from us.]
<i>Abl.</i>	Mē,	<i>by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbīs,		<i>by, with, or</i>

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

		Sing.			Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Tū,	<i>thou</i>	Vōs,		<i>ye</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Tuī,	<i>of thee</i>	Vestri and vestrum,		<i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Tībi,	<i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbīs,		<i>to or for you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Tē,	<i>thee</i>	Vōs,		<i>you</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Tū,	<i>O thou</i>	Vōs,		<i>O ye</i> [you.]
<i>Abl.</i>	Tē,	<i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	Vōbīs,		<i>by, with, or from</i>

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē* ; as, *ēgōmēt, I myself* ; *tūtē, tūtēmet, thou thyself* ; *nosmet, vosmet, we ourselves, you yourselves.*

Obs. 2. The *Dat.* *mīhi* is sometimes contracted into *mī*.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it*, the Determinative Pronoun *is, eā, id* is usually employed. See § 79.

§ 76. II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case.

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns ; but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined :

Sing. and Plur.

<i>Nom.</i> (wanting)		
<i>Gen.</i> Suī,		<i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Sībi,		<i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Sē or sēsē,		<i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Sē or sēsē,		<i>by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

Obs. Sībi and sē are strengthened by the addition of *mēt* : as, sībinēt, sēmēt.

§ 77. III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly :

M.	F.	N.	
Meūs,	meā,	meum,	<i>my or mine.</i>
Tuūs,	tuā,	tuum,	<i>thy or thine.</i>
Nostēr,	nostrā,	nostrum,	<i>our.</i>
Vestēr,	vestrā,	vestrum,	<i>your.</i>
Suūs,	suā,	suum,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of meūs is mi.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *plē* : as, meoptē ingēniō, *by my own ability.* Mēt is added to suūs : as, suāmēt scēlērā, *his own crimes.*

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative : as, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, *whose ?*

Obs. 4. From nostēr, vestēr, cūjūs (ā, um) are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātis), which signify *belonging to a country* : as,

nostrās,	-ātīs,	<i>of our country ;</i>
vestrās,	-ātīs,	<i>of your country ;</i>
cūjās,	-ātīs,	<i>of what country ?</i>

§ 78. IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are of the *First, Second, and Third Persons* : namely, hic, haec, hoc, *this near me* ; istē, istā, istūd, *that near you* ; illē, illā, illūd, *that near him, or that yonder.*

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this near me.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Hīc	haec	hoc	Hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	Hūjūs			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Hūic			Hīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	Hunc	hanc	hoc	Hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs		

2. *Istě, istā, istūd, that near you.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Istě	istā	istūd	Istī	istae	istā
<i>Gen.</i>	Istīūs			Istōrum	istarum	istorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Istī			Istīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	Istum	istam	istūd	Istōs	istas	istā
<i>Abl.</i>	Istō	istā	istō	Istīs		

3. *Illě, illā, illūd, that near him, that yonder.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Illě	illā	illūd	Illī	illae	illā
<i>Gen.</i>	Illīūs			Illōrum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Illī			Illīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	Illum	illam	illūd	Illōs	illas	illā
<i>Abl.</i>	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs		

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *eě* or *c*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of *hic*, but may be added to others also: *as, hūjusě, hieě, &c.*

Istě with the particle *ce* or *c* is thus declined:

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Istic	istaec	istuc	Isticě	istaec	istaec
<i>Gen.</i>	Istiuscě			Istōrunc	istarunc	istorunc
<i>Dat.</i>	Istī			Istiscě		
<i>Acc.</i>	Istunc	istanc	istuc	Istoscě	istascě	istaec
<i>Abl.</i>	Istōc	istāc	istōc	Istiscě		

Illě with the particle *ce* or *c* is declined in the same way: *as, illic, illae, illuc, &c.*

Obs. 2. *Ecce* or *en*, *behold*, are sometimes prefixed to *ille* and *iste*: *as, eccllum* or *ellum*; *eccistam*; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses *illī* as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of *illī*. The stem was originally *ol*, which appears in *ōl-im, yonder*.

§ 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are: *is, eā, id, this, and he, she, that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence; *its* compound, *idem, eādem, idem, the same*; and *ipsě, ipsā, ipsum, self, same*.

1. *Is, eā, id, this, and he, she, it.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Is	eā	id	ī	eae	eā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ejūs			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Eī			Eīs or eīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	Eum	eam	id	Eōs	eās	eā
<i>Abl.</i>	Eō	eā	eō	Eīs or eīs		

2. *Idem, eādem, idem, the same.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Idem	eādem	idem	Idem	eaedem	eādem
<i>Gen.</i>	Ejusdem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	Eidem			Iidem or eisdem		
<i>Acc.</i>	Eundem	eandem	idem	Eosdem	easdem	eādem
<i>Abl.</i>	Eodem	eādem	eodem	Iidem or eisdem		

3. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, *self, same*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsīūs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī			Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsīs		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to is: as, *ecca, eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas*.
See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of is sometimes loses the *i*: as, *eumpse, campse, eopse, eapse*; also *rēapse* = *rē ipsā* or *rē eā ipsā*.

§ 80. VI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quī, quae, quōd, *who or which*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjūs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cūi or cūī			Quībūs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* *quōiūs*, in the *Dat. Sing.* *quoi*, in the *Abl. Sing.* *quī* (instead of *quō*), and in the *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.*, *quīs* (instead of *quībūs*). The *Abl. quī* is usually found in combination with the preposition *cum*: as, *quicum* instead of *quōcum*.

Obs. 2. From *qui* are formed the two indefinite relatives *quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever, whosoever, whichever, whatever*.

Quicumque, *quaeicumque*, *quodcumque* is declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quōd*, with the addition of the indeclinable *cunque*: as, *Gen. cūjuscunque*, &c.

Besides *quisquis*, the *Neut. quidquid* (or *quicquid*) and *Abl. quōquō* are the only forms in use.

Quicumque is generally an Adjective; *quisquis* always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative *utēr, utrā, utrum*, *which of the two?* is used as a relative with *cunque*; as, *utercunque*, *utrācunque*, *utrumcunque*, *whichever of the two*.

§ 81. VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, *who, which? what?*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Quīs or quī	quae	quīd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjūs		[or quōd	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cūī		[or quōd	Quībūs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībūs		

Obs. 1. *Quīs* is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; *quīd* only as a Substantive; *quī* and *quōd* as Adjectives: as, *quīd commisit, what has he done?* *quōd faciēns commisit, what deed has he done?*

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* *quī* is used only in the signification *how* ? as, *quī fit?* *how does it happen?*

Obs. 3. *Quis* and *quī* are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, *quisnam* or *quīnam*, *quaenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who then, what then?*

Obs. 4. When the question refers to one of two, *ūter*, *utrā*, *utrum*, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of *ūter* and its compounds see § 57, *Obs. 2.*

Obs. 5. Some derivatives of *quis* are also capable of being used interrogatively ; as, *quantus*, *how great?* *quālis*, *of what sort?* *quōt*, *how many?* See § 83.

§ 82. VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Quis is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *si*, *if*, and *nē*, *lest*. Thus, *si quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it changes *quae* to *qua* wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative *quis*.

Obs. 1. *Quid* is used as a Substantive, *quōd* as an Adjective : *quis* both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, *quī* usually as an Adjective.

Obs. 2. *Ecquīs* (*ecquī*), *ecquā* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquōd*), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle *nam*, *ecquisnam*, is formed from *quis*, and declined in the same manner.

Obs. 3. *Alīquis*, *āliquid*, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and *āliqui*, *āliquā*, *āliquōd*, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like *quis* (*quī*), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form *āliquā* is used.

Obs. 4. *Quisquam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen. cūjusquam*, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is *ullūs*.

Obs. 5. The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in *quid* being used Substantively, and those in *quōd* Adjectively :—

<i>Quidam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> ,	<i>a certain one.</i>
<i>Quispiam</i> ,	<i>quaepiam</i> ,	<i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ,	<i>any one.</i>
<i>Quivīs</i> ,	<i>quaevis</i> ,	<i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quilibēt</i> ,	<i>quaeibēt</i> ,	<i>quodlibēt</i> or <i>quidlibēt</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>Quisque</i> .	<i>quaeque</i> ,	<i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ,	<i>every one.</i>
<i>Unusquisque</i> ,	<i>uniquaeque</i> ,	<i>unumquodque</i> or <i>unumquidque</i> ,	<i>Gen. uniuscujusque</i> , &c., <i>each one.</i>

Obs. 6. The following form the *Gen.* in *īūs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : *ullus*, *any*, *nullus*, *none* ; *nonnullus* (*usu. in pl.*) *some* ; *ālius*, *one, another* ; *alter*, *the one or other of two* ; *neuter*, (a contraction of *ne uter*), *neither of two*. See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *i*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae* : as *nulli consilii*, *nullo consilio*, &c. The compound *alterūter* is declined either in both words : *ae*, *Gen. alterius atriūs* : or only in the latter : *ae*, *Dat. alterutrō*.

§ 83. IX. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
Tāļs, <i>of such a kind.</i>	Quāļs, <i>of such a kind as (rel.); of what kind? (interr.)</i>	Quāļiscunquē, Quāļisquāļis, <i>of what kind soever.</i>	Quāļisļībēt, <i>of any kind you please.</i>
Tantūs, <i>so great.</i>	Quantūs, <i>so great as (rel.); how great? (interr.)</i>	Quantuscunquē, Quantusquantus, <i>how great soever.</i>	Āļquantūs, <i>of a certain, considerable size.</i> Quantusļībēt, Quantusvis, <i>of any size you please.</i>
Tōt (indecl.), <i>so many.</i> Tōtīdem (indecl.), <i>just so many.</i>	Quōt (indecl.), <i>so many as (rel.); how many? (interr.)</i>	Quotcunquē, Quotquōt, <i>how many soever.</i>	Āļquōt (indecl.), <i>some number.</i> Quotļībēt (indecl.), <i>any number you please.</i>

CHAPTER XIV.—THE VERB.

§ 84. VERBS are of two kinds :

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action: as, āmo puērum, *I love the boy.*

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not govern an Accusative Case: as, sēdēo, *I sit*; curro, *I run.*

Transitive Verbs have TWO VOICES :

(i.) The ACTIVE VOICE, before which the Nominative represents the actor (from āgo, actum, *to do*): as, pātēr āmāt, *the father loves.*

(ii.) The PASSIVE VOICE, (from pātiōr, passūs, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the object of the action: as, pātēr āmātur, *the father is loved.*

Obs. 1. Some Verbs may have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice: as, armōr, *I arm myself*; vertōr, *I turn myself*; lāvōr, *I wash myself.*

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal: as, currītūr, *it is run (they run).*

DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, *hortor milites*, *I exhort the soldiers*; *milēs moritur*, *the soldier is dying*; *glōrior*, *I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four MOODS (Mōdi):

- I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, *āmo*, *I love*; *scribīt*, *he writes*.
 - II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, *scribo ut lēgāt*, *I write that he may read*; *lēgāt āliquis*, *let some one read*.
- Obs.* The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.
- III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, *āmā*, *love*; *nē occīdīto*, *thou shalt not kill*.
 - IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person: as, *āmārē*, *to love*.

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles:

Active.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Āmans,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Āmātūrus,	<i>about to love.</i>

Passive.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Āmātus,	<i>loved.</i>
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Āmandus,	<i>fit to be loved.</i>

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

Āmātum,	<i>to love.</i>
Āmātū,	<i>in loving, to be loved.</i>

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

<i>Gen.</i>	Āmandī,	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Āmando,	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Āmandum,	<i>a loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Āmando,	<i>by loving.</i>

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempörä) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

Imperfect Tenses.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Present. | Āmo, | <i>I love or I am loving.</i> |
| 2. Past. | Āmābam, | <i>I was loving.</i> |
| 3. Future. | Āmābo, | <i>I shall love.</i> |

Obs. The *Present* and *Future* Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the Future Tense is never Imperfect: āmābo never signifies *I shall be loving*. Hence it is better to call these two tenses *Present* and *Future* simply.

Perfect Tenses.

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. Present. | Āmāvī, | <i>I have loved.</i> |
| 2. Past. | Āmāvēram, | <i>I had loved.</i> |
| 3. Future. | Āmāvēro, | <i>I shall have loved.</i> |

Obs. The *Present-Perfect* has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, Āmāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*; and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist*. As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	Āmo, <i>I love</i>		Āmāmūs, <i>We love</i>
2.	Āmās, <i>thou lovest</i>		Āmātīs, <i>ye love</i>
3.	Āmāt, <i>he loves.</i>		Āmant, <i>they love.</i>

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Imperfect Infinitive Active. (See further, Chap. XVIII.)

	I. or A Conjugation.	II. or E Conjugation.	III. or Consonant and U Conjugation.	IV. or I Conjugation
<i>Stem.</i>	āma,	mōne,	rēg, mīnu,	audi,
<i>Infinitive.</i>	{ āmā-re, to love.	{ mōnē-re, to advise.	{ rēg-ēre, mīnū-ēre, to rule, to lessen.	{ audi-re, to hear.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

CHAPTER XV.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR
CONJUGATIONS.

§ 90. The Verb *sum*, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

sum, *fūi*, *fūtūrūs*, *essē*,—*to be*. Stem : *ēs-*, *fu-*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sum,</i>	<i>I am</i>		<i>Plur. Sūmūs,</i>	<i>We are</i>
<i>Ēs,</i>	<i>thou art</i>		<i>Estīs,</i>	<i>ye are</i>
<i>Est,</i>	<i>he is.</i>		<i>Sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēram,</i>	<i>I was</i>		<i>Plur. Ērāmūs,</i>	<i>We were</i>
<i>Ērās,</i>	<i>thou wast</i>		<i>Ērātīs,</i>	<i>ye were</i>
<i>Ērāt,</i>	<i>he was.</i>		<i>Ērant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēro,</i>	<i>I shall be</i>		<i>Plur. Ērīmūs,</i>	<i>We shall be</i>
<i>Ērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt be</i>		<i>Ērītīs,</i>	<i>ye will be</i>
<i>Ērīt,</i>	<i>he will be.</i>		<i>Ērunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuī,</i>	<i>I have been, or</i>		<i>Plur. Fuīmūs,</i>	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>I was</i>			<i>we were</i>
<i>Fuistī,</i>	<i>thou hast been, or</i>		<i>Fuistīs,</i>	<i>ye have been, or</i>
	<i>thou wast</i>			<i>ye were</i>
<i>Fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been, or</i>		<i>Fuērunt</i>	} <i>they have been, or</i>
	<i>he was.</i>		<i>or fuērē</i>	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>		<i>Plur. Fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had been</i>
<i>Fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>		<i>Fuērātīs,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>Fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been.</i>		<i>Fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>		<i>Plur. Fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>We shall have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>		<i>Fuērītīs,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been.</i>		<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēs,</i>	<i>Be thou</i>		<i>Plur. Estē,</i>	<i>Be ye</i>
------------------	----------------	--	--------------------	--------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Esto,</i>	<i>Thou shalt be</i>		<i>Plur. Estōtē,</i>	<i>Ye shall be</i>
<i>Esto,</i>	<i>he shall be, or let</i>		<i>Sunto,</i>	<i>they shall be, or let</i>
	<i>him be.</i>			<i>them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Sim,	<i>I may be</i>		P. Simūs,	<i>We may be</i>
Sīs,	<i>thou mayst be</i>		Sītis,	<i>ye may be</i>
Šīt,	<i>he may be.</i>		Šint,	<i>they may be.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Essem or } <i>I might be</i>		P. Essēmūs or } <i>We might be</i>
fōrem,		fōrēmūs,
Essēs or } <i>thou mightst be</i>		Essētīs or } <i>ye might be</i>
fōrēs,		fōrētīs,
Essēt or } <i>he might be.</i>		Essent or } <i>they might be.</i>
fōrēt,		fōrent,

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuērim,	<i>I may have been</i>		P. Fuērimūs,	<i>We may have been</i>
Fuēris,	<i>thou mayst have been</i>		Fuēritīs,	<i>ye may have been</i>
Fuērit,	<i>he may have been.</i>		Fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Fuisse,	<i>I might</i>	} <i>have</i>		P. Fuissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>	} <i>have</i>	
Fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>		} <i>been.</i>		Fuissētīs,		<i>ye might</i>
Fuissēt,	<i>he might</i>				Fuissent,		<i>they might</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Essē,	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	Fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	Fūtūrus essē, or fōrē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------	---------------------

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards *'sum*, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds :

Absum,	<i>I am away.</i>		Obsum,	<i>I am in the way.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present.</i>		Praesum,	<i>I am before.</i>
Dēsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>		Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>		Subsum,	<i>I am under.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am present at.</i>		Štipersum,	<i>I am surviving.</i>

Prōsum, however, takes *d* before *e*; as,

<i>Sing.</i> Prōsum,	<i>Plur.</i> Prōsumūs,		<i>Past-Imp.</i> Prōdēram.
Prōdēs,	Prōdestis,		<i>Future.</i> Prōdēro.
Prōdest,	Prōsunt.		<i>Imp. Inf.</i> Prōdēssē.

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pōtis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

§ 91. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārē,—to love. Stem : āma-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-o,	<i>I love</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āmūs,	<i>We love</i>
Ām-ās,	<i>thou lovest</i>		Ām-ātīs,	<i>ye love</i>
Ām-āt,	<i>he loves.</i>		Ām-ant,	<i>they love.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing</i> Ām-ābam,	<i>I was loving</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābāmūs,	<i>We were loving</i>
Ām-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving</i>		Ām-ābātīs,	<i>ye were loving</i>
Ām-ābāt,	<i>he was loving.</i>		Ām-ābant,	<i>they were loving</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ābo,	<i>I shall love</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābīmūs,	<i>We shall love</i>
Ām-ābīs,	<i>thou wilt love</i>		Ām-ābītīs,	<i>ye will love</i>
Ām-ābīt,	<i>he will love.</i>		Ām-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing</i> Ām-āvī,	<i>I have loved, or</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvīmūs,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	<i>I loved</i>			<i>or we loved</i>
Ām-āvistī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>		Ām-āvistīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	<i>or thou lovedst</i>			<i>or ye loved</i>
Ām-āvīt,	<i>he has loved, or</i>		Ām-āvērunt,	<i>they have loved,</i>
	<i>he loved.</i>		<i>or ām-āvērē)</i>	<i>or they loved.</i>

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvērām,	<i>I had loved</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērāmūs,	<i>We had loved</i>
Ām-āvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>		Ām-āvērātīs,	<i>ye had loved</i>
Ām-āvērāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>		Ām-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēro,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērīmūs,	<i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i>		
Ām-āvērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>						Ām-āvērītīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Ām-āvērīt,	<i>he will</i>						Ām-āvērint,	<i>they will</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ā,	<i>Love thou.</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātē,	<i>Love ye.</i>
--------------------	-------------------	--	----------------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āto,	<i>Thou shalt love</i>		<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātōtē,	<i>Ye shall love</i>		
Ām-āto,	<i>he shall love, or</i>				Ām-anto,	<i>they shall love, or</i>
	<i>let him love.</i>					<i>let them love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-em,</i> <i>Ām-ēs,</i> <i>Ām-ēt,</i>	<i>I may love</i> <i>thou mayst love</i> <i>he may love.</i>		P. <i>Ām-ēmūs,</i> <i>Ām-ētīs,</i> <i>Ām-ent,</i>	<i>We may love</i> <i>ye may love</i> <i>they may love.</i>
--	--	--	---	---

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-ārem,</i> <i>Ām-ārēs,</i> <i>Ām-ārēt,</i>	<i>I might love</i> <i>thou mightst love</i> <i>he might love.</i>		P. <i>Ām-ārēmūs,</i> <i>Ām-ārētīs,</i> <i>Ām-ārent,</i>	<i>We might love</i> <i>ye might love</i> <i>they might love.</i>
--	--	--	---	---

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvērīm,</i> <i>Ām-āvērīs,</i> <i>Ām-āvērīt,</i>	<i>I may</i> <i>thou mayst</i> <i>he may</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>loved.</i>		P. <i>Ām-āvērīmūs,</i> <i>Ām-āvērītīs,</i> <i>Ām-āvērīnt,</i>	<i>We may</i> <i>ye may</i> <i>they may</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>loved</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. <i>Ām-āvissēm,</i> <i>Ām-āvissēs,</i> <i>Ām-āvissēt,</i>	<i>I might</i> <i>thou mightst</i> <i>he might</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>loved.</i>		P. <i>Ām-āvissēmūs,</i> <i>Ām-āvissētīs,</i> <i>Ām-āvissent,</i>	<i>We might</i> <i>ye might</i> <i>they might</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>loved</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ārē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
PERFECT. <i>Ām-āvissē,</i>	{ <i>to have</i> <i>loved.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>) <i>essē,</i>	{ <i>to be about</i> <i>to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. <i>Ām-andī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
Dat. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
Acc. <i>Ām-andum,</i>	<i>the loving</i>
Abl. <i>Ām-ando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Ām-ātum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>		<i>Ām-ātū,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>
-----------------	-----------------	--	----------------	---------------------

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. <i>Ām-ans</i> (<i>ntis</i>),	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE. <i>Ām-ātūrus</i> (<i>a, um</i>),	<i>about to love.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: as,

<i>āmāvisti</i> becomes <i>āmasti</i>		<i>āmāvēram</i> becomes <i>āmāram</i>
<i>āmavistis</i> „ <i>āmastis</i>		<i>āmāvēro</i> „ <i>āmāro</i>
<i>āmāvērunt</i> „ <i>āmārunt</i> :		<i>āmāvērīm</i> „ <i>āmārim</i>
(but <i>āmāvērē</i> does not become		<i>āmāvissēm</i> „ <i>āmāssēm</i>
<i>āmārē</i> , which would be con-		<i>āmāvissē</i> „ <i>āmāssē</i> .
founded with the Imperf. Infm.).		

§ 92. SECOND OR Σ CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnĕo, mōnūi, mōnītum, mōnĕrĕ,—to advise. Stem : mōne-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕo,	<i>I advise</i>		P. Mōn-ĕmūs,	<i>We advise</i>
Mōn-ĕs,	<i>thou advisest</i>		Mōn-ĕtīs,	<i>ye advise</i>
Mōn-ĕt,	<i>he advises.</i>		Mōn-ĕnt,	<i>they advise.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕbam,	<i>I was advising</i>		P. Mōn-ĕbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ĕbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>		Mōn-ĕbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ĕbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>		Mōn-ĕbant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>		P. Mōn-ĕbīmūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ĕbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>		Mōn-ĕbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ĕbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>		Mōn-ĕbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūi,	<i>I have advised, or</i> <i>I advised</i>		P. Mōn-ūīmūs,	<i>We have advised,</i> <i>or we advised</i>
Mōn-ūistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or</i> <i>thou advisedst</i>		Mōn-ūistīs,	<i>ye have advised,</i> <i>or ye advised</i>
Mōn-ūit,	<i>he has advised, or</i> <i>he advised.</i>		Mōn-ūĕrunt	} <i>they have advised,</i> <i>or they advised</i>
			or -ūĕrĕ,	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūĕram,	<i>I had advised</i>		P. Mōn-ūĕrāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-ūĕrās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>		Mōn-ūĕrātīs,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-ūĕrāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>		Mōn-ūĕrant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūĕro,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>		P. Mōn-ūĕrimūs,	<i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i> <i>advised.</i>
Mōn-ūĕrīs,	<i>thou will</i>			Mōn-ūĕritīs,	<i>ye will</i>	
Mōn-ūĕrīt,	<i>he will</i>			Mōn-ūĕrint,	<i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕ,	<i>Advise thou.</i>		P. Mōn-ĕtĕ,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	--	-------------	-------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ĕto,	<i>Thou shalt advise</i>		P. Mōn-ĕtōtĕ,	<i>Ye shall advise</i>
Mōn-ĕto,	<i>he shall advise, or let</i> <i>him advise.</i>		Mōn-ĕnto,	<i>they shall advise, or</i> <i>let them advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eam, <i>I may advise</i>		P. Mön-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i>
Mön-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>		Mön-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mön-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>		Mön-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ërem, <i>I might advise</i>		P. Mön-ëremūs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mön-ërēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>		Mön-ërētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mön-ërēt, <i>he might advise.</i>		Mön-ërent. <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-uërim, <i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>		P. Mön-uërimūs, <i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mön-uërīs, <i>thou mayst</i>			Mön-uëritīs, <i>ye may</i>	
Mön-uërit, <i>he may</i>			Mön-uërint. <i>they may</i>	

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-uissēm, <i>I might</i>	} <i>have</i>		P. Mön-uissēmūs, <i>We might</i>	} <i>have</i>
Mön-uissēs, <i>thou mightst</i>			Mön-uissētīs, <i>ye might</i>	
Mön-uissēt, <i>he might</i>			Mön-uissent, <i>they might</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

GERUND.

IMPERF. Mön-ërě, <i>to advise.</i>		Gen. Mön-ëndī, <i>of advising</i>
PERFECT. Mön-uissē, { <i>to have</i>		Dat. Mön-endo, <i>for advising</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītūrus { <i>to be about</i>		Acc. Mön-endam, <i>the advising</i>
(a, um) essē, { <i>to advise.</i>	Abl. Mön-endo, <i>by advising.</i>	

SUPINES.

Mön-ītum, <i>to advise.</i>		Mön-ītū, <i>to be advised.</i>
-----------------------------	--	--------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mön-ens (ntis), <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītūrūs (a, um), <i>about to advise.</i>

§ 93. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION
ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o,	<i>I rule</i>	P. Rēg-īmūs,	<i>We rule</i>
Rēg-īs,	<i>thou rulest</i>	Rēg-itīs,	<i>ye rule</i>
Rēg-īt,	<i>he rules.</i>	Rēg-unt,	<i>they rule.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbam,	<i>I was ruling</i>	P. Rēg-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbās,	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	Rēg-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were ruling</i>
Rēg-ēbāt,	<i>he was ruling.</i>	Rēg-ēbant,	<i>they were ruling.</i>

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I shall rule</i>	P. Rēg-ēmūs,	<i>We shall rule</i>
Rēg-es,	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	Rēg-ētīs,	<i>ye will rule</i>
Rēg-ēt,	<i>he will rule.</i>	Rēg-ent,	<i>they will rule.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or</i> <i>I ruled</i>	P. Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or</i> <i>we ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or</i> <i>thou ruledst</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or</i> <i>ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or</i> <i>he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt or } -ērē, } <i>they have ruled, or</i> <i>they ruled.</i>	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	P. Rex-ērāmūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-ērās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	Rex-ērātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-ērāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	P. Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-ērītīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-ērīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ē,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	P. Rēg-ītē,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
-----------	-------------------	-------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ito,	<i>Thou shalt rule</i>	P. Rēg-ītōtē,	<i>Ye shall rule</i>
Rēg-ito,	<i>he shall rule, or let</i> <i>him rule.</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall rule, or</i> <i>let them rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>		P. Rĕg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule.</i>
Rĕg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>		Rĕg-ātīs,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rĕg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>		Rĕg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĕrem,	<i>I might rule</i>		P. Rĕg-ĕrēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>		Rĕg-ĕrētīs,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rĕg-ĕrēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>		Rĕg-ĕrent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕx-ĕrim,	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>		P. Rĕx-ĕrimūs,	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>	
Rĕx-ĕrīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>		} <i>ruled.</i>		Rĕx-ĕrītīs,		<i>ye may</i>
Rĕx-ĕrīt,	<i>he may</i>				Rĕx-ĕrint,		<i>they may</i>

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕx-issĕm,	<i>I might</i>	} <i>have</i>		P. Rĕx-issĕmūs,	<i>We might</i>	} <i>have</i>	
Rĕx-issĕs,	<i>thou mightst</i>		} <i>ruled.</i>		Rĕx-issĕtīs,		<i>ye might</i>
Rĕx-issĕt,	<i>he might</i>				Rĕx-issent,		<i>they might</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	<i>to rule.</i>
PERFECT. Rĕx-issĕ,	{ <i>to have</i>
	<i>ruled.</i>
FUTURE. Rĕc-tŭrus	{ <i>to be about</i>
(a, um) ĕssĕ,	<i>to rule.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Rĕg-ĕndī,	<i>of ruling</i>
Dat. Rĕg-ĕndo,	<i>for ruling</i>
Acc. Rĕg-ĕndum,	<i>the ruling</i>
Abl. Rĕg-ĕndo,	<i>by ruling.</i>

SUPINES.

Rĕc-tum,	<i>to rule.</i>		Rĕc-tŭ,	<i>to be ruled.</i>
----------	-----------------	--	---------	---------------------

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Rĕg-ĕns (ntis),	<i>ruling.</i>
FUTURE. Rĕc-tŭrŭs (a, um),	<i>about to rule.</i>

§ 94. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audīo, audīvī, audītum, audīrē,—to hear. Stem: audi-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io, Aud-īs, Aud-īt,	<i>I hear thou hearest he hears.</i>		P. Aud-īmūs, Aud-ītis, Aud-iunt,	<i>We hear ye hear they hear.</i>
----------------------------------	--	--	--	---

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam, Aud-iēbās, Aud-iēbāt,	<i>I was hearing thou wast hearing he was hearing.</i>		P. Aud-iēbāmūs, Aud-iēbātis, Aud-iēbant,	<i>We were hearing ye were hearing they were hearing.</i>
---	--	--	--	---

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam, Aud-iēs, Aud-iēt,	<i>I shall hear thou wilt hear he will hear.</i>		P. Aud-iēmūs, Aud-iētis, Aud-ient,	<i>We shall hear ye will hear they will hear.</i>
-------------------------------------	--	--	--	---

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī, Aud-ivistī, Aud-ivīt,	<i>I have heard, or I heard thou hast heard, or thou heardst he has heard, or he heard.</i>		P. Aud-ivīmūs, Aud-ivistis, Aud-ivērunt or -ivērē,	<i>We have heard, or we heard ye have heard, or ye heard } they have heard, or they heard.</i>
---	---	--	---	--

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram, Aud-ivērās, Aud-ivērāt,	<i>I had heard thou hadst heard he had heard.</i>		P. Aud-ivērāmūs, Aud-ivērātis, Aud-ivērant,	<i>We had heard ye had heard they had heard.</i>
--	---	--	---	--

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēro, Aud-ivērīs, Aud-ivērīt,	<i>I shall thou wilt he will</i> } <i>have heard.</i>		P. Aud-ivērimūs, Aud-ivēritis, Aud-ivērint,	<i>We shall ye will they will</i> } <i>have heard.</i>
---	---	--	---	--

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-ī,	<i>Hear thou.</i>		P. Aud-ītē,	<i>Hear ye</i>
-----------	-------------------	--	-------------	----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-īto, Aud-īto,	<i>Thou shall hear he shall hear, or let him hear.</i>		P. Aud-ītōtē, Aud-iunto,	<i>Ye shall hear they shall hear, or let them hear.</i>
-------------------------	--	--	-----------------------------	---

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>		P. Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>		Aud-iātīs,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>		Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>		P. Aud-iēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>		Aud-irētīs,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear.</i>		Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	<i>We may</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>
Aud-ivērīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>		Aud-ivērītīs,	<i>ye may</i>	
Aud-ivērīt,	<i>he may</i>		Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>	

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissem,	<i>I might</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	<i>We might</i>	} <i>have heard.</i>
Aud-ivissēs,	<i>thou mightst</i>		Aud-ivissētīs,	<i>ye might</i>	
Aud-ivissēt,	<i>he might</i>		Aud-ivissent,	<i>they might</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Aud-irē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERFECT. Aud-ivissē,	{ <i>to have heard.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-ītūrus	{ <i>to be about to hear.</i>
(a, um) essē,	

GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendī,	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendo,	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>the hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendo,	<i>by hearing.</i>

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	<i>to hear.</i>		Aud-ītū,	<i>to be heard.</i>
-----------	-----------------	--	----------	---------------------

PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Aud-iens (ntis),	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE. Aud-ītūrūs (a, um),	<i>about to hear.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *v*'s are often contracted into *i*: as,

audivisti becomes audiisti or audisti	audivērim becomes audiērim
audivistis " audiistis or audistis	audivissem " { audissem or
audivit " audit	audissem
audivērunt " audiērunt	audivissē " { audissē or
audivēram " audiēram	audissē.
audivēro " audiēro	

§ 95. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, ämätüs sum or fuī, ämārī,—to be loved. Stem: äma-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ör,	} <i>I am loved</i>		P. Am-ämür,	} <i>We are loved</i>	
Am-ärīs or			Am-ämīnī,		} <i>ye are loved</i>
äm-ärē,			Am-antūr,		
Am-ätür,	} <i>he is loved.</i>				

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-äbär,	} <i>I was being</i>		P. Am-äbämür,	} <i>We were being</i>	
Am-äbärīs or			Am-äbämīnī,		} <i>ye were being</i>
äm-äbärē,			Am-äbantūr,		
Am-äbätür,	} <i>he was being</i>				
	} <i>loved.</i>			} <i>loved.</i>	

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-äbör,	} <i>I shall be loved</i>		P. Am-äbīmür,	} <i>We shall be loved</i>	
Am-äbörīs or			Am-äbīmīnī,		} <i>ye will be loved</i>
äm-äbörē,			Am-äbuntūr,		
Am-äbitür,	} <i>he will be loved.</i>				

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs sum	} <i>I have been</i>		P. Am-ätī sümüs	} <i>We have been</i>	
or fuī			or fuīmüs,		} <i>loved, or were</i>
Am-ätüs ës	} <i>thou hast been</i>		Am-ätī estīs	} <i>ye have been</i>	
or fuistī,			or fuistīs,		} <i>loved, or were</i>
Am-ätüs est	} <i>he has been</i>		Am-ätī sunt,	} <i>they have been</i>	
or fuīt,			fuērunt, or		} <i>loved, or were</i>
	} <i>or was loved.</i>				

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs eram	} <i>I had been</i>		P. Am-ätī eramüs	} <i>We had been</i>	
or fuëram,			or fuëramüs,		} <i>loved</i>
Am-ätüs ëräs			Am-ätī ërätīs		
or fuëräs,	or fuërätīs,	} <i>loved</i>			
Am-ätüs ërät	} <i>he had been</i>			Am-ätī ërant,	} <i>they had been</i>
or fuërät,		or fuërant,		} <i>loved.</i>	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs ëro	} <i>I shall have been</i>		P. Am-ätī ërīmüs	} <i>We shall have</i>	
or fuëro,			or fuërimüs,		} <i>been loved</i>
Am-ätüs ërīs			Am-ätī ërītīs		
or fuërīs,	or fuërītīs,	} <i>loved</i>			
Am-ätüs ërīt	} <i>he will have been</i>			Am-ätī ërunt,	} <i>they will have</i>
or fuërīt.		or fuërint,		} <i>been loved.</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ārē. *Be thou loved.* | P. Am-āminī, *Be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-ātōr, *Thou shalt be loved* | P. Am-antor, *They shall be*
 Am-ātōr, *he shall be loved, or* | *loved, or let*
let him be loved. | *them be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ēr, *I may be loved* | P. Am-ēmūr, *We may be loved*
 Am-ērīs or } *thou mayst be* | Am-ēmīnī, *ye may be loved*
 ām-ērē, } *loved* | Am-entūr, *they may be loved.*
 Am-ētūr, *he may be loved.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ārēr, *I might be loved* | P. Am-ārēmūr, *We might be loved*
 Am-ārērīs or } *thou mightst be* | Am-ārēmīnī, *ye might be loved*
 ām-ārērē, } *loved* | Am-ārentūr, *they might be loved.*
 Am-ārētūr, *he might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ātūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Am-ātī simūs } *We may have*
 or fuērīm, } *loved* | or fuērīmūs, } *been loved*
 Am-ātūs sīs } *thou mayst have* | Am-ātī sītīs } *ye may have been*
 or fuērīs, } *been loved* | or fuērītīs, } *loved*
 Am-ātūs sīt } *he may have been* | Am-ātī sint } *they may have*
 or fuērīt, } *loved.* | or fuērīnt, } *been loved*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ātūs essem } *I might have been* | P. Am-ātī essēmūs } *We might have*
 or fuissēm, } *loved* | or fuissēmūs, } *been loved*
 Am-ātūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Am-ātī essētīs, } *ye might have*
 or fuissēs, } *been loved* | or fuissētīs, } *been loved*
 Am-ātūs essēt } *he might have* | Am-ātī essent } *they might have*
 or fuissēt, } *been loved.* | or fuissent, } *been loved.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Am-ārī, *to be loved.*
 PERFECT. Am-ātus (a, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been loved.*
 FUTURE. Am-ātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

Obs. The form *āmātum* in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders. The word *īrī* is the Imperfect Infinitiva Passive of the Verb *eo*, *I go*.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Am-ātūs (a, um), *loved or having been loved.*
 GERUNDIVE. Am-andūs (a, um), *fit to be loved.*

§ 96. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mönëör, mönitüs sum or fuī, mönērī,—to be advised. Stem: möno-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eör, Mön-ērīs or mön-ērē, Mön-ētūr,	I am advised thou art advised he is advised.	P. Mön-ēmūr, Mön-ēmīnī, Mön-entūr,	We are advised ye are advised they are advised.

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ēbār, Mön-ēbārīs or mön-ēbārē, Mön-ēbātūr,	I was being ad- vised thou wast being advised he was being ad- vised.	P. Mön-ēbāmūr, Mön-ēbāmīnī, Mön-ēbantūr,	We were being advised ye were being advised they were being advised.

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ēbör, Mön-ēbērīs or Mön-ēbērē, Mön-ēbītūr,	I shall be ad- vised thou wilt be ad- vised he will be ad- vised.	P. Mön-ēbīmūr, Mön-ēbīmīnī, Mön-ēbuntūr,	We shall be ad- vised ye will be ad- vised they will be ad- vised.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītüs sum or fuī, Mön-ītüs ës or fuistī, Mön-ītüs est or fuīt,	I have been ad- vised, or was advised thou hast been ad- vised, or wast advised he has been ad- vised, or was advised.	P. Mön-ītī sümūs or fuīmūs, Mön-ītī estīs or fuistīs, Mön-ītī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	We have been ad- vised, or were advised ye have been ad- vised, or were advised they have been ad- vised, or were advised.

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītüs eram or fueram, Mön-ītüs erās or fuērās, Mön-ītüs erāt or fuērāt,	I had been ad- vised thou hadst been advised he had been ad- vised.	P. Mön-ītī ērāmūs or fuērāmūs, Mön-ītī ērātīs or fuērātīs, Mön-ītī ērant or fuērant,	We had been ad- vised ye had been ad- vised they had been ad- vised.

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītüs ero or fuëro, Mön-ītüs erīs or fuërīs, Mön-ītüs erīt or fuërīt,	I shall have been advised thou wilt have been advised he will have been advised.	P. Mön-ītī ērīmūs or fuërīmūs, Mön-ītī erītīs or fuërītīs, Mön-ītī erunt or fuërint,	We shall have been advised ye will have been advised they will have been advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-ērē, *Be thou advised.* | P. Mön-ēmīni, *Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ētör, *Thou shalt be advised* | P. Mön-entör, *They shall be ad-*
 Mön-ētör, *he shall be advised, or* | *vised, or let them*
 let him be advised. | *be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eär,	{ <i>I may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>		P. Mön-eämür,	{ <i>We may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
Mön-eärīs or	{ <i>thou mayst be</i> <i>advised</i>		Mön-eämīni,	{ <i>ye may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
mön-eärē,	{ <i>he may be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>		Mön-eantür,	{ <i>they may be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>
Mön-eätür,				

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ērēr,	{ <i>I might be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>		P. Mön-ērēmür,	{ <i>We might be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
Mön-ērērīs or	{ <i>thou mightst be</i> <i>advised</i>		Mön-ērēmīni,	{ <i>ye might be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
mön-ērērē,	{ <i>he might be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>		Mön-ērentür,	{ <i>they might be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>
Mön-ērētür,				

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs sim	{ <i>I may have been</i> <i>advised</i>		P. Mön-ītī simūs	{ <i>We may have</i> <i>been advised</i>
or fuërim,	{ <i>thou mayst have</i> <i>been advised</i>		Mön-ītī sītīs	{ <i>ye may have been</i> <i>advised</i>
Mön-ītūs sis	{ <i>he may have been</i> <i>advised.</i>		Mön-ītī sint	{ <i>they may have</i> <i>been advised.</i>
or fuëris,				
Mön-ītūs sīt				
or fuërit,				

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs essem	{ <i>I might have been</i> <i>advised</i>		P. Mön-ītī essēmūs	{ <i>We might have</i> <i>been advised</i>
or fuissēm,	{ <i>thou mightst have</i> <i>been advised</i>		Mön-ītī essētīs	{ <i>ye might have</i> <i>been advised</i>
Mön-ītūs essēs	{ <i>he might have</i> <i>been advised.</i>		Mön-ītī essēt	{ <i>they might have</i> <i>been advised</i>
or fuissēs,				
Mön-ītūs essēt				
or fuissēt,				

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Mön-ērī,	<i>to be advised.</i>
PERFECT. Mön-ītūs (a, um), essē or fuissē,	<i>to have been advised.</i>
FUTURE. Mön-ītum irī,	<i>to be about to be advised</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Mön-ītūs (a, um),	<i>advised or having been advised.</i>
GERUNDIVE. Mön-endūs (a, um),	<i>fit to be advised.</i>

* 97. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Rĕgōr, reotūs sum or fuī, rĕgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rĕg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ōr,	<i>I am ruled</i>	P. Rĕg-īmūr,	<i>We are ruled</i>
Rĕg-ērīs	or } <i>thou art ruled</i>	Rĕg-īmīnī,	<i>ye are ruled</i>
rĕg-ērĕ,		Rĕg-untūr,	<i>they are ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ītūr,	<i>he is ruled.</i>		

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ēbār,	<i>I was being ruled</i>	P. Rĕg-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being ruled</i>
Rĕg-ēbārīs	or } <i>thou wast being ruled</i>	Rĕg-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
rĕg-ēbārĕ,		Rĕg-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being ruled.</i>		

3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ār,	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	P. Rĕg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
Rĕg-ērīs	or } <i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	Rĕg-ēmīnī,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rĕg-ērĕ,		Rĕg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ētūr,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	or fuī,	} <i>I have been ruled, or was ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	} <i>We have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ēs			or fuīmūs,	
fuistī,	or fuistīs,	} <i>thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled</i>	Rec-tī sunt,	} <i>they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
Rectūs est			or fuērunt, or fuērĕ,	
fuīt,		or fuērĕ,		

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	or fuēram,	} <i>I had been ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī ērāmūs	} <i>We had been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērās			or fuērāmūs,	
or fuērās,	} <i>thou hadst been ruled</i>	} <i>he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērant	} <i>they had been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ērāt			or fuērāt,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	or fuēro,	} <i>I shall have been ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī ērīmūs	} <i>We shall have been ruled</i>
Rec-tūs ērīs			or fuērīmūs,	
or fuērīs,	} <i>thou wilt have been ruled</i>	} <i>he will have been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērant	} <i>they will have been ruled.</i>
Rec-tūs ērīt			or fuērīt,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĕrĕ, *Be thou ruled.* | P. Rĕg-ĭmĭni, *Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĭtĕr, *Thou shalt be ruled*
Rĕg-ĭtĕr, *he shall be ruled, or*
let him be ruled. | P. Rĕg-untĕr, *They shall be*
ruled, or let
them be ruled.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĕr, *I may be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĭs or } *thou mayst be*
rĕg-ĕrĕ, } *ruled*
Rĕg-ĕtĭr, *he may be ruled.* | P. Rĕg-ĕmĭr, *We may be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕmĭnĭ, *ye may be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕantĭr, *they may be ruled.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rĕg-ĕrĕr, *I might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĕrĭs or } *thou mightst be*
rĕg-ĕrĕrĕ, } *ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĕtĭr, *he might be ruled.* | P. Rĕg-ĕrĕmĭr, *We might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĕmĭnĭ, *ye might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrentĭr, *they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tĭs sim } *I may have been*
or fuĕrim, } *ruled*
Rec-tĭs sĭs } *thou mayst have*
or fuĕrĭs, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭs sĭt or } *he may have been*
fuĕrĭt, } *ruled.* | P. Rec-tĭ sĭmĭs } *We may have*
or fuĕrimĭs, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭ sĭtĭs or } *ye may have been*
fuĕrĭtĭs, } *ruled*
Rec-tĭ sĭnt or } *they may have*
fuĕrint, } *been ruled.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tĭs essem } *I might have*
or fuĭssĕm, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭs essĕs } *thou mightst have*
or fuĭssĕs, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭs essĕt } *he might have*
or fuĭssĕt, } *been ruled.* | P. Rec-tĭ essĕmĭs } *We might have*
or fuĭssĕmĭs, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭ essĕtĭs } *ye might have*
or fuĭssĕtĭs, } *been ruled*
Rec-tĭ essĕnt } *they might have*
or fuĭssĕnt, } *been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Rĕg-ĭ, *to be ruled.*
PERFECT. Rec-tus (a, um) essĕ or fuĭssĕ, *to have been ruled.*
FUTURE. Rec-tum ĭrĭ, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Rec-tĭs (a, um), *ruled or having been ruled*
GERUNDIVE. Rĕg-ĕndĭs (a, um), *fit to be ruled.*

§ 98. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audīōr, audītūs sum or fuī, audīrī, —to be heard. Stem: audi-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

8. Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>		P. Aud-imūr,	<i>We are heard</i>
Aud-īrīs or	} <i>thou art heard</i>		Aud-īmīnī,	<i>ye are heard</i>
aud-īrē,			Aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard.</i>
Aud-itūr,	<i>he is heard.</i>			

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

8. Aud-iēbār,	{ <i>I was being</i> <i>heard</i>		P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ <i>We were being</i> <i>heard</i>
Aud-iēbārīs or	} <i>thou wast being</i> <i>heard</i>		Aud-iēbāmīnī,	{ <i>ye were being</i> <i>heard</i>
aud-iēbārē,			Aud-iēbantūr,	{ <i>they were being</i> <i>heard.</i>
Aud-iēbātūr,	{ <i>he was being</i> <i>heard.</i>			

3. FUTURE TENSE.

8. Aud-iār,	<i>I shall be heard</i>		P. Aud-iēmūr,	<i>We shall be heard</i>
Aud-iērīs or	} <i>thou wilt be</i> <i>heard</i>		Aud-iēmīnī,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
aud-iērē,			Aud-ientūr,	<i>they will be heard.</i>
Aud-iētūr,	<i>he will be heard.</i>			

4. PERFECT TENSE.

8. Aud-itūs sum	} <i>I have been</i> <i>heard, or was</i> <i>heard</i>		P. Aud-itī sūmūs	} <i>We have been</i> <i>heard, or were</i> <i>heard</i>
or fuī,			or fuīmūs,	
Aud-itūs ēs			Aud-itī estīs	
or fuistī,	or fuistīs,			
Aud-itūs est	} <i>he has been</i> <i>heard, or was</i> <i>heard.</i>		Aud-itī sunt,	} <i>they have been</i> <i>heard, or were</i> <i>heard.</i>
or fuīt,			fuērunt, or	

5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

8. Aud-itūs ēram	} <i>I had been heard</i>		P. Aud-itī ērāmūs	} <i>We had been</i> <i>heard</i>
or fuēram,			or fuērāmūs,	
Aud-itūs ērās			Aud-itī ērātīs	
or fuērās,	or fuērātīs,			
Aud-itūs ērāt	} <i>he had been</i> <i>heard.</i>		Aud-itī ērant	} <i>they had been</i> <i>heard.</i>
or fuērāt,			or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

8. Aud-itūs ēro	} <i>I shall have been</i> <i>heard</i>		P. Aud-itī ērimūs	} <i>We shall have</i> <i>been heard</i>
or fuēro,			or fuērimūs,	
Aud-itūs ērīs			Aud-itī ērītīs	
or fuērīs,	or fuērītīs,			
Aud-itūs ērīt	} <i>he will have been</i> <i>heard.</i>		Aud-itī ērunt	} <i>they will have</i> <i>been heard.</i>
or fuērīt,			or fuērīnt,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irē, *Be thou heard.* | P. Aud-īminī, *Be ye heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr, *Thou shalt be heard* | P. Aud-iuntōr, *They shall be heard,*
 Aud-itōr, *he shall be heard, or* | *or let them be*
let him be heard. | *heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār, *I may be heard* | P. Aud-iāmūr, *We may be heard*
 Aud-iārīs or } *thou mayst be* | Aud-iāmīnī, *ye may be heard*
 aud-iārē, } *heard* | Aud-iantūr, *they may be heard.*
 Aud-iātūr, *he may be heard.*

2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr, *I might be heard* | P. Aud-irēmūr, *We might be heard*
 Aud-irērīs or } *thou mightst be* | Aud-irēmīnī, *ye might be heard*
 aud-irērē, } *heard* | Aud-irentūr, *they might be heard.*
 Aud-irētūr, *he might be heard.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim } *I may have been* | P. Aud-itī sīmūs } *We may have*
 or fuērīm, } *heard* | or fuērīmūs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs sīs } *thou mayst have* | Aud-itī sītīs } *ye may have been*
 or fuērīs, } *been heard* | or fuērītīs, } *heard*
 Aud-itūs sīt } *he may have been* | Aud-itī sint } *they may have*
 or fuērīt, } *heard.* | or fuērīnt, } *been heard.*

4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs essem } *I might have been* | P. Aud-itī essēmūs } *We might have*
 or fuissēm, } *heard* | or fuissēmūs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs essēs } *thou mightst have* | Aud-itī essētīs } *ye might have*
 or fuissēs, } *been heard* | or fuissētīs, } *been heard*
 Aud-itūs essēt } *he might have* | Aud-itī essent } *they might have*
 or fuissēt, } *been heard.* | or fuissent, } *been heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Aud-irī, *to be heard.*
 PERFECT. Aud-itus (a, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been heard.*
 FUTURE. Aud-itum irī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um), *heard or having been heard*
 GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um), *fit to be heard.*

§ 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *amo*. (See also § 149.)

<i>accūso</i> , <i>I accuse.</i>	<i>hōnōro</i> , <i>I honour.</i>	<i>opto</i> , <i>I wish.</i>
<i>āro</i> , <i>I plough.</i>	<i>laudo</i> , <i>I praise.</i>	<i>orno</i> , <i>I adorn.</i>
<i>clāmo</i> , <i>I cry out.</i>	<i>libēro</i> , <i>I set free.</i>	<i>pāro</i> , <i>I prepare.</i>
<i>hābito</i> , <i>I dwell.</i>	<i>nōmīno</i> , <i>I name.</i>	<i>rōgo</i> , <i>I ask.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *moneo*. (See also § 150.)

<i>adhībeo</i> , <i>I apply.</i>	<i>hābeo</i> , <i>I have.</i>	<i>plāceo</i> , <i>I please.</i>
<i>cōhibeo</i> , <i>I restrain.</i>	<i>mōreo</i> , <i>I deserve.</i>	<i>praebeo</i> , <i>I present.</i>
<i>dēbeo</i> , <i>I owe.</i>	<i>nōceo</i> , <i>I injure.</i>	<i>prōhibeo</i> , <i>I prevent.</i>
<i>exerceo</i> , <i>I exercise.</i>	<i>pāreo</i> , <i>I obey.</i>	<i>terreo</i> , <i>I frighten.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *rēgo*. (See also § 157, sqq.)

<i>cingo</i> , <i>I gird.</i>	<i>dūco</i> , <i>I lead.</i>	<i>plango</i> , <i>I beat.</i>	<i>tēgo</i> , <i>I cover.</i>
<i>dico</i> , <i>I say.</i>	<i>jungo</i> , <i>I join.</i>	<i>sūgo</i> , <i>I suck.</i>	<i>tingo</i> , <i>I dye.</i>

Obs. *Dico*, *speak*, *dūco*, *lead*, have *dīc*, *dūc*, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, *Obs.* (p. 62).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 163.)

<i>custōdio</i> , <i>I guard.</i>	<i>fīnio</i> , <i>I end.</i>	<i>mūnio</i> , <i>I fortify.</i>
<i>dormio</i> , <i>I sleep.</i>	<i>impēdho</i> , <i>I hinder.</i>	<i>nūtrio</i> , <i>I nourish.</i>
<i>ērūdio</i> , <i>I train.</i>	<i>mollio</i> , <i>I soften.</i>	<i>pūnio</i> , <i>I punish.</i>

§ 100. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I (in the Imperfect Tenses)

Cāpio, *cēpī*, *captum*, *cāpērē*,—*to take*. Stem: *cāpi-*, *cāp-*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Cāp-io</i> , <i>I take</i>		<i>Cāp-īmūs</i> , <i>We take</i>
	<i>Cāp-īs</i> , <i>thou takest</i>		<i>Cāp-ītīs</i> , <i>ye take</i>
	<i>Cāp-īt</i> , <i>he takes.</i>		<i>Cāp-iunt</i> , <i>they take.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Cāp-iēbam</i> , <i>I was taking,</i>	like	<i>aud-iēbam.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Cāp-iam</i> , <i>I shall take,</i>	"	<i>aud-iam.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Cāp-iam</i> , <i>I may take,</i>	like	<i>aud-iam.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Cāp-ērem</i> , <i>I might take,</i>	"	<i>rēg-ērem.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Cāp-ē</i> , <i>take thou,</i>	like	<i>rēg-ē.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Cāp-īto</i> , <i>thou shalt take,</i>	"	<i>rēg-īto.</i>
	<i>Cāp-iunto</i> , <i>they shall take,</i>	"	<i>aud-iunta</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect. Căp-ērē, to take, like rēg-ērē.

PARTICIPLE.

Imperfect. Căp-iens, taking, like aud-iens.

GERUND.

Căp-iendi, of taking, like aud-iendi.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-iōr, I am taken		Căp-īmūr, We are taken
	Căp-ērīs } thou art or -ērē, } taken		Căp-īmīnī, ye are taken
	Căpītūr, he is taken.		Căp-iuntūr, they are taken.

Past-Imperf. Căp-iēbār, I was being taken, like aud-iēbār.

Future. Căp-iār, I shall be taken, ,, aud-iār.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Căp-iār, I may be taken, like aud-iār
Past-Imperf. Căp-ērēr, I might be taken, ,, rēg-ērēr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Căp-ērē, be thou taken, like rēg-ērē.
Future. Căp-ītōr, thou shalt be taken, ,, rēg-ītōr.
 Căp-iuntōr, they shall be taken, ,, aud-iuntōr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect. Căp-ī, to be taken, ,, rēg-ī

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-ī, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The *i* in the Imperf. Tense is dropped before *i* and *er*. In the Imperative the final *i* is changed into *e*.

Obs. 3. The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are:

fācio,	fcī,	factum,	fācērē,	<i>make.</i>
jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācērē,	<i>throw.</i>
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgitum,	fūgērē,	<i>fly.</i>
fōdio,	fōdī,	fossam,	fōdērē,	<i>dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpūī,	raptum,	rāpērē,	<i>seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpērī,	partum,	pārērē,	<i>bring forth.</i>
quātio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quātērē,	<i>shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpivī,	cūpitum,	cūpērē,	<i>desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpivī,		sāpērē,	<i>taste.</i>
lēcio,			lēcērē,	} rare, except in composition.
spēcio,			spēcērē	

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grādīōr,	gressūs sum,	grādī,	<i>walk.</i>
mōriōr,	mortuūs sum,	mōrī,	<i>die.</i>
pātīōr,	passūs sum,	pātī,	<i>suffer.</i>

Obs. 4. Orior, ortus sum, ōrīrī, to rise, follows the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood, ōrīrī, Imperf. Subj. ōrīrer, less frequently ōrērer, Future Part. ōrītūrus. So also, mōrītūrus, from mōriōr,

- § 101. I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör
 II. Vëreör, vëritüs sum, vëreri, to fear, „ möneör.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	{	Present.	Hortör, Hort-äriš (äre), &c.	I exhort. } thou exhortest, &c.	Vër-eör, Vër-ëriš (ëre), &c.	I fear. } thou fearest, &c.
		Past-Imp.	Hort-äbär,	I was exhorting.	Vër-ëbär,	I was fearing.
		Future.	Hort-äbör,	I shall exhort.	Vër-ëbör,	I shall fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sum,	} I have exhorted, or I exhorted.	Vër-itüs sum,	} I have feared, or I feared.
		Past-Perf.	Hort-ätüs ëram,	} I had exhorted.	Vër-itüs ëram,	} I had feared.
		Fut.-Perf.	Hort-ätüs ëro,	} I shall have ex- horted.	Vër-itüs ëro,	} I shall have feared.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	{	Present.	Hort-ër,	I may exhort.	Vër-eär,	I may fear.
		Past-Imp.	Hort-ärer,	I might exhort.	Vër-ërer,	I might fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sim,	} I may have ex- horted.	Vër-itüs sim,	} I may have feared.
		Past-Perf.	Hort-ätüs essem,	} I might have exhorted.	Vër-itüs essem,	} I might have feared.
IMPERATIVE.	{	Present.	Hort-äre,	Exhort thou.	Vër-ëre,	Fear thou.
		Future.	Hort-ätör,	} thou shalt ex- hort.	Vër-ëtör,	thou shalt fear.
INFINITIVE.	{	Imperf.	Hort-äri,	to exhort.	Vër-ëri,	to fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätüs essë,	} to have ex- horted.	Vër-itüs essë,	} to have feared.
		Future.	Hort-ätürüs essë,	} to be about to exhort.	Vër-itürüs essë,	} to be about to fear.
PARTICIPLES.	{	Imperf.	Hort-ans,	exhorting.	Vër-ens,	fearing.
		Future.	Hort-ätürüs,	about to exhort.	Vër-itürüs,	about to fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätüs,	having exhorted.	Vër-itüs,	having feared.
		Gerundive.	Hort-andüs,	} fit to be ex- horted.	Vër-endüs,	fit to be feared.
SUPINES.	Hort-ätum,	to exhort.	Vër-itum,	to fear.		
GERUND.	Hort-ätü,	to be exhorted.	Vër-itü,	to be feared.		
	Hort-andi,	of exhorting.	Vër-endi,	of fearing.		

Examples for Conjugation.

I. Cönör,	I endeavour.	II. Intueör,	I behold.
Consölör,	I console.	Mëreör,	I describe.
Mirör,	I wonder.	Polliceör,	I promise.

Ots. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Particles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandüs, fit to be exhorted; ädeptus, having obtained, or having been obtained. The following are the principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense: äböminätüs, ädeptus auspiciätüs, amplexus, complexus, com-

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partiōr, partītūs sum, partīri, to divide, „ audiōr.

III.			IV.			
Present.	Lōquōr, Lōqu-ērīs, (ērē), &c.	I speak. } thou speakest, &c.	Partiōr, Part-irīs (irē), &c.	I divide. } thou dividest, &c.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
Past-Imp.	Lōqu-ēbār,	I was speaking.	Part-iēbār,	I was dividing.		
Future.	Lōqu-ār,	I shall speak.	Part-iār,	I shall divide.		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sum,	I have spoken, } or I spoke.	Part-itūs sum,	I have divided, } or I divided.		
Past-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs eram,	I had spoken.	Part-itūs eram,	I had divided.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Fut.-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs ero,	I shall have } spoken.	Part-itūs ero,	I shall have di- } vided.		
Present.	Lōqu-ār,	I may speak.	Part-iār,	I may divide.	IMPERATIVE.	
Past-Imp.	Lōqu-ērēr,	I might speak.	Part-irēr,	I might divide.		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sim,	I may have } spoken.	Part-itūs sim,	I may have di- } vided.		
Past-Perf.	Lōcū-tūs essem,	I might have } spoken.	Part-itūs essem,	I might have } divided.		
Present.	Lōqu-ērē,	Speak thou.	Part-irē,	Divide thou.	INFINITIVE.	
Future.	Lōqu-ītōr,	{ thou shalt speak.	Part-itōr,	{ thou shalt di- vide.		
Imperf.	Lōqu-i,	to speak.	Part-iri,	to divide.	PARTICIPLES.	
Perfect.	Lōcū-tus essē,	} to have spoken.	Part-itus essē,	} to have divided.		
Future.	Lōcū-tūrus essē,	} to be about to speak.	Part-itūrus essē,	} to be about to divide.		
Imperf.	Lōqu-ens,	speaking.	Part-iens,	dividing.	PARTICIPLES.	
Future.	Lōcū-tūrus	about to speak.	Part-itūrus,	about to divide.		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs,	having spoken.	Part-itūs,	having divided.		
Gerundive.	Lōqu-endūs,	fit to be spoken.	Part-iendūs,	fit to be divided.		
SUPINES.	Lōcū-tum, Lōcū-tū,	to speak. to be spoken.	Part-itum, Part-itū,	to divide. to be divided.		
GERUND.	Lōqu-endī,	of speaking.	Part-iendī,	of dividing.		

Examples for Conjugation.

III. Fruōr, fruītūs sum, I enjoy.	IV. Blandiōr, I flatter.
Fungōr, functūs sum, I perform.	Largiōr, I give money.
Lābōr, lapsūs sum, I slip.	Mentiōr, I lie.

mentus, confessus, dētestātus, ēmentītus, expertus, exsecrātus, mēditātus, mensus, mōdērātus, ōpinātus, pactus, partītus, testātus, ultus. See §§ 169-172.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. The four following Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called *Semi-Deponents*, or *Neuter-Passives* :

Esseō, sōlitūs sum, sōlērē, to be accustomed.	Gaudeo, gaudētūs sum, gaudērē, to rejoice.
Audeo, ausūs sum, audērē, to dare.	Fido, fisūs sum, fidērē, to trust.

CHAPTER XVII.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Amātūrūs sum,	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Amātūrūs eram,	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Amātūrūs ero,	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amātūrūs fui,	<i>I have been or was about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Amātūrūs fueram,	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Amātūrūs sim,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Amātūrūs essem,	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amātūrūs fuërim,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Amātūrūs fuisset,	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Amātūrus essë,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amātūrus fuissë,	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which is to be, should be, or ought to be done.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Amandūs sum,	<i>I am to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Amandūs eram,	<i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Amandūs ero,	<i>I shall be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amandūs fui,	<i>I have been or was to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Amandūs fueram,	<i>I had been to be loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Amandūs sim,	<i>I may be to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	Amandūs essem,	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amandūs fuërim,	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Amandūs fuisset,	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Amandus essë,	<i>to be fit to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Amandus fuissë,	<i>to have been fit to be loved.</i>

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: as, *mihī eundum est, I must go; obliuiscendum tibi injūriarum esse censeo, I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

CHAPTER XVIII.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. **STEMS.**—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: as, *āma*, *love*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: as, *mōne*, *advise*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a *consonant* or *u*: as, *rēg*, *rule*; *mīnu*, *lessen*.

The Stems of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: as, *audi*, *hear*.

§ 104. **UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.**—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

III CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. rēg-o	mīnu-o
	2. rēg-īs	mīnu-īs
	3. rēg-īt	mīnu-īt
<i>Plur.</i>	1. rēg-īmūs	mīnu-īmūs
	2. rēg-ītīs	mīnu-ītīs
	3. rēg-unt	mīnu-unt

I CONJUGATION.		II CONJUGATION.		IV CONJUGATION.	
<i>Sing.</i>	1. āma-o = āmo	mōne-o		audi-o	
	2. āma-is = āmās	mōne-is = mōnēs		audi-īs = audīs	
	3. āma-īt = āmāt	mōne-īt = mōnēt		audi-īt = audīt	
<i>Plur.</i>	1. āma-īmūs = āmāmūs	mōne-īmūs = mōnēmūs		audi-īmūs = audīmūs	
	2. āma-ītīs = āmātīs	mōne-ītīs = mōnētīs		audi-ītīs = audītīs	
	3. āma-unt = āmant	mōne-unt = mōnent		audi-unt	

§ 105. **PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.**—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	-m	-mus	as in	rēgēba-m	rēgēbā-mūs
2.	-s	-tis	„	rēgēba-s	rēgēbā-tīs
3.	-t	-nt	„	rēgēbā-t	rēgēbā-nt.

Or with a vowel prefixed :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	o-(m)	ī-mūs	as in	rĕg-o	rĕg-ī-mūs
2.	ī-s	ī-tīs	„	rĕg-ī-s	rĕg-ī-tīs
3.	ī-t	u-nt	„	rĕg-ī-t	rĕg-u-nt.

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses*.—The *Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the *Imperative* the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains: as, rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ītĕ: in the contracted conjugations, āmā = āma-ĕ; mōnĕ = mōne-ĕ; audī = audi-ĕ.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *-a*: as, rĕg-a-m, mōne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the *a* of the tense suffix into *e*: as, āma-a-m = āme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *ĕrĕ*: as, rĕg-ĕrĕ: in the contracted conjugations, āmā-rĕ = āma-ĕrĕ; mōnĕ-re = mōne-ĕrĕ; audī-rĕ = audi-ĕrĕ. The *Participle* has the suffix *-ens* (stem *-ent*): as, rĕg-ens, audi-ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ns = āma-ens; mōne-ns = mōne-ens.

Obs. The *e* of the *Imperative* is dropped in *dĭc*, *speak*, from *dĭco*; *dūc*, *lead*, from *dūco*; *fāc*, *make*, from *fācio*; *fĕr*, *bring*, from *fĕro*.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ĕba*: as, rĕg-ĕba-m, audi-ĕba-m; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āmā-ba-m = āma-ĕba-m; mōnĕ-ba-m = mōne-ĕba-m. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *ĕre*: as, rĕg-ĕre-m: in the contracted conjugations āmā-re-m = āma-ĕre-m; mōnĕ-re-m = mōne-ĕre-m; audī-re-m = audi-ĕre-m.

3. *Future Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *b* in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, āmā-b-o; mōnĕ-b-o: and the tense suffix *a* or *e* in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, *a* being used in the first person, and *e* in all the other persons: as, rĕg-a-m, rĕg-ĕ-s, rĕg-ĕ-t, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ĕ-s, audi-ĕ-t, &c.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed :

1. By adding *v* to the Stem; as, āma (āmo), āmā-v-ī; audi (audio), audī-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Stem: as, mōnĕ (mōneo), mōn-u-ī. The

final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. 1. The terminations **v** and **u** are the same, and are derived from *fu-i*, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v*: as, *mīnu-o*, *mīnu-i*, *lessen*; *volv-o*, *volv-i*, *roll*; *vert-o*, *vert-i*, *turn*.

3. By adding **s** to the Stem: as, *rĕg* (*rĕgŏ*), *rexī* = *reg-s-ī*.

Obs. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

(i) *cs*, *gs*, *qus*, *hs* are contracted into *x*: as, *dūco*, *duxī*, *lead*; *cŏquo*, *coxi*, *cook*; *trāho*, *traxī*, *drag*.

(ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s*: as, *scrībo*, *scripsī*, *write*; *nūbo*, *nupsī*, *marry* (of women).

(iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, *mitto*, *mīsī*, *send*; *laedo*, *laesī*, *injure*.

4. By reduplication: as,

tend (*tendo*), *tĕ-tendī*, *stretch*.

cād (*cādo*), *cĕ-cīdī*, *fall*.

morde (*mordeo*), *mŏ-mordī*, *bite*.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem: as,

jāc or *jāci* (*jācio*), *jĕcī*, *throw*.

vĕni (*vĕnio*), *vĕnī*, *come*.

mŏve (*mŏveo*), *mŏvī*, *move*.

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted: as, *tundo*, *tūtūdī*, *beat*, but *contundo*, *contūdī*, *beat small*, *bruise*; *pello*, *pĕpŭllī*, *drive*, but *compello*, *compŭllī*, *drive together*.

1. *Present-Perfect* or *Aorist Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *is*; 2nd pers. *āmāv-is-tī*, *āmāv-is-tis*; 3rd pers. *āmāv-ēr-unt*; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *eri*: as, *āmāv-ĕri-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *issĕ*: as, *āmāv-issĕ*.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *ĕra*: as, *āmāv-ĕra-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *isse*: as, *āmāv-isse-m*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix *ĕr*: as, *āmāv-ĕr-o*.

§ 108. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: as,

I. *Āmā-tum*, *āmā-tū*.

II. *Mŏnī-tum*, *mŏnī-tu*.

III. *Rec-tum*, *rec-tū*.

IV. *Audī-tum*, *audī-tū*.

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

(i) *g*, *qu*, *h* become *e* before *t*: as, *rĕgo*, *rectum*; *cŏquo*, *coctum*; *trāho*, *tractum*.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: as, *scrībo*, *scriptum*; *nūbo*, *nuptum*.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: as, *laedo*, *laesum*, *injure*; *claudŏ*, *clausum*, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem alone becomes *s*: as, *cĕdo*, *ces-sum*, *yield*; *mitto*, *mis-sum*, *send*,

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrūs* to the Stem : as,

āmā-tūrūs ; mōnī-tūrūs ; rec-tūrūs ; audi-tūrūs.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine : as,

tractūrūs, scriptūrūs, laesūrūs.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations : as,

	Stem.	Supine.	Fut. Part.	
jūvo	(jūva)	jūtum	jūvātūrūs,	help.
sēco	(sēca)	sectum	sēcātūrūs,	cut.
sōno	(sōna)	sōnītum	sōnātūrūs,	sound.
mōriōr	(mōr and mōri)	mortuūs (part.)	mōritūrūs,	die.

§ 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active*.—On the omission of *v*, *vi*, and *ve*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets : as, *dedērunt*, *they gave*. The suffix *ēre* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus* : as, *fāciundum* from *fācio*, *make* or *do* ; *pōtiundum* from *pōtiōr*, *obtain possession of*.

3. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification : as, *laetābundus*, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy* ; *lacrimābundus*, *weeping profusely* ; *fūribundus*, *full of rage* ; *mōribundus*, *in the very article of death*.

§ 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier* : as, *āmāriēr* instead of *āmārī* ; *rēgiēr*, instead of *rēgī*.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it* : as, *sim*, *sīs*, *sit* from *sum* ; *vēlim* from *vōlo*, *be willing* ; *nōlim* from *nōlo*, *be unwilling* ; *mālim* from *mālo*, *be more willing*. Also *ēdim* instead of *ēdam* from *ēdo*, *eat* ; and *duim* from *do*, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations : as, *dī duint*, *may the gods grant* ; *dī tē perduint*, *may the gods destroy thee*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim* : hence the forms *levasso*, *faxo*, *faxim*, are contractions of *lēvāvēso*, *fācēsō*, *fācēsīm*. In like manner *ausim* is formed from the old Perfect *ausī* (from *audeo*), which has become obsolete

CHAPTER XIX.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given :

I. Possum, pōtūi, possē,—to be able.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Pos-sum	Pos-sim	S.	Pōt-ūi	Pōt-ūerim		
	Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis		Pōt-ūistī	Pōt-ūerīs		
	Pōt-est	Pos-sit		Pōt-ūit	Pōt-ūerīt		
P.	Pos-sūmūs	Pos-simūs	P.	Pōt-ūimūs	Pōt-ūerimūs		
	Pōt-estīs	Pos-sitīs		Pōt-ūistīs	Pōt-ūeritīs		
	Pos-sunt	Pos-sint		Pōt-ūerunt (ērē)	Pōt-ūerint		
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	Pōt-eram	Pos-sem	S.	Pōt-ūeram	Pōt-ūissem		
	Pōt-erās	Pos-sēs		Pōt-ūerās	Pōt-ūissēs		
	Pōt-erāt	Pos-sēt		Pōt-ūerāt	Pōt-ūissēt		
P.	Pōt-erāmūs	Pos-sēmūs	P.	Pōt-ūerāmūs	Pōt-ūissēmūs		
	Pōt-erātīs	Pos-sētīs		Pōt-ūerātīs	Pōt-ūissētīs		
	Pōt-erant	Pos-sent		Pōt-ūerant	Pōt-ūissent		
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	Pōt-ēro		S.	Pōt-ūero			
	Pōt-erīs			Pōt-ūerīs			
	Pōt-erīt			Pōt-ūerīt			
P.	Pōt-erīmūs		P.	Pōt-ūerimūs			
	Pōt-eritīs			Pōt-ūeritīs			
	Pōt-erunt			Pōt-ūerint			

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect—Possē. *Perfect*—Pōtūissē. *Future*—wanting

The *Imperative*, *Gerund*, and *Supine* are wanting
The *Imperfect Participle* pōtens is used only as an *Adjective*, *powerful*.

Obs. Possum is compounded of 'pot' (pōtis, *able*) and sum: hence pos-sum is a contraction of pōt-sum; pos-sim of pōt-sim; pos-sem of pōt-essem; pōt-ūi of pōt-ful; and pos-sē of pōt-essē.

- § 113. II. Vōlo, vōlūi, vellē, — *to be willing.*
 III. Nōlo, nōlūi, nollē, — *to be unwilling.*
 IV. Mālo, mālūi, mallē, — *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

1. Present.

S.	Vōlo	Nōlo	Mālo
	Vīs	Non vīs	Māvīs
	Vult	Non vult	Māvult
P.	Vōlūmūs	Nōlūmūs	Mālūmūs
	Vultīs	Non vultīs	Māvultīs
	Vōlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

2. Past-Imperfect.

S.	Vōl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
	Vōl-ēbās	Nōl-ēbās	Māl-ēbās
	Vōl-ēbāt	Nōl-ēbāt	Māl-ēbāt
P.	Vōl-ēbāmūs	Nōl-ēbāmūs	Māl-ēbāmūs
	Vōl-ēbātīs	Nōl-ēbātīs	Māl-ēbātīs
	Vōl-ēbant	Nōl-ēbant	Māl-ēbant

3. Future.

S.	Vōl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
	Vōl-ēs	Nōl-ēs	Māl-ēs
	Vōl-ēt	Nōl-ēt	Māl-ēt
P.	Vōl-ēmūs	Nōl-ēmūs	Māl-ēmūs
	Vōl-ētīs	Nōl-ētīs	Māl-ētīs
	Vōl-ent	Nōl-ent	Māl-ent

4. Perfect.

S.	Vōl-ūi	Nōl-ūi	Māl-ūi
	Vōl-uistī	Nōl-uistī	Māl-uistī
	Vōl-uīt	Nōl-uīt	Māl-uīt
P.	Vōl-uīmūs	Nōl-uīmūs	Māl-uīmūs
	Vōl-uistīs	Nōl-uistīs	Māl-uistīs
	Vōl-uērunt or -uērē	Nōl-uērunt or -uērē	Māl-uērunt or -uērē

5. Past-Perfect.

S.	Vōl-uēram	Nōl-uēram	Māl-uēram
	Vōl-uērās	Nōl-uērās	Māl-uērās
	Vōl-uērāt	Nōl-uērāt	Māl-uērāt
P.	Vōl-uērāmūs	Nōl-uērāmūs	Māl-uērāmūs
	Vōl-uērātīs	Nōl-uērātīs	Māl-uērātīs
	Vōl-uērant	Nōl-uērant	Māl-uērant

6. Future-Perfect.

S.	Vōl-uēro	Nōl-uēro	Māl-uēro
	Vōl-uērīs	Nōl-uērīs	Māl-uērīs
	Vōl-uērīt	Nōl-uērīt	Māl-uērīt
P.	Vōl-uērīmūs	Nōl-uērīmūs	Māl-uērīmūs
	Vōl-uērītīs	Nōl-uērītīs	Māl-uērītīs
	Vōl-uēriat	Nōl-uēriat	Māl-uēriat

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	Vël-im	Nöl-im	Mäl-im
	Vël-is	Nöl-is	Mäl-is
	Vël-ît	Nöl-ît	Mäl-ît
P.	Vël-imûs	Nöl-imûs	Mäl-imûs
	Vël-itîs	Nöl-itîs	Mäl-itîs
	Vël-int	Nöl-int	Mäl-int

2. *Past-Imperfect.*

S.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lës	Nol-lës	Mal-lës
	Vel-lët	Nol-lët	Mal-lët
P.	Vel-lëmûs	Nol-lëmûs	Mal-lëmûs
	Vel-lëtîs	Nol-lëtîs	Mal-lëtîs
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

S.	Völ-uërim	Nöl-uërim	Mäl-uërim
	Völ-uëris	Nöl-uëris	Mäl-uëris
	Völ-uërit	Nöl-uërit	Mäl-uërit
P.	Völ-uërimûs	Nöl-uërimûs	Mäl-uërimûs
	Völ-uëritîs	Nöl-uëritîs	Mäl-uëritîs
	Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

4. *Past-Perfect.*

S.	Völ-uissëm	Nöl-uissëm	Mäl-uissëm
	Völ-uissës	Nöl-uissës	Mäl-uissës
	Völ-uissët	Nöl-uissët	Mäl-uissët
P.	Völ-uissëmûs	Nöl-uissëmûs	Mäl-uissëmûs
	Völ-uissëtîs	Nöl-uissëtîs	Mäl-uissëtîs
	Völ-uissent	Nöl-uissent	Mäl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nöl-î	(wanting.)
	Nöl-itê	

Future.

Nöl-îto
 Nöl-îto
 Nöl-îtôtê
 Nöl-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

Vel-lê	Nol-lê	Mal-lê
--------	--------	--------

Perfect.

Völ-uissê	Nöl-uissê	Mäl-uissê
-----------	-----------	-----------

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ōr	Fēr-ār	S.	Lātūs sum	Lātūs sim		
	Fer-rīs	Fēr-ārīs		Lātūs ēs	Lātūs sīs		
	Fer-tūr	Fēr-ātūr		Lātūs est	Lātūs sīt		
P.	Fēr-īmūr	Fēr-āmūr	P.	Lāti sūmūs	Lāti sīmūs		
	Fēr-īmīnī	Fēr-āmīnī		Lāti estīs	Lāti sītīs		
	Fēr-untūr	Fēr-antūr		Lāti sunt	Lāti sint		
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ēbār	Fer-rer	S.	Lātūs eram	Lātūs essem		
	Fēr-ēbārīs	Fer-rērīs		Lātūs ērās	Lātūs essēs		
	Fēr-ēbātūr	Fer-rētūr		Lātūs ērāt	Lātūs essēt		
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūr	Fer-rēmūr	P.	Lāti ērāmūs	Lāti essēmūs		
	Fēr-ēbāmīnī	Fer-rēmīnī		Lāti ērātīs	Lāti essētīs		
	Fēr-ēbantūr	Fer-rentūr		Lāti ērant	Lāti essent		
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ār		S.	Lātūs ēro			
	Fēr-ērīs			Lātūs ērīs			
	Fēr-ētūr			Lātūs ērit			
P.	Fēr-ēmūr		P.	Lāti ērīmūs			
	Fēr-ēmīnī			Lāti ēritīs			
	Fēr-entūr			Lāti ērunt			

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>	Fer-rē Fēr-īmīnī	<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fer-rī
<i>Future.</i>	Fer-tōr Fer-tōr Fēr-untōr	<i>Perfect.</i>	Lātūs (a, um) essē
		<i>Future.</i>	Lātum irī
		PARTICIPLES.	
		<i>Perfect.</i>	Lātūs (ā, um)
		<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fēr-endūs (ā, um)

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *ē* and *ī* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-īs*; *fer-t* = *fēr-it*; *fer-rem* = *fēr-ērem*; *fer-rē* = *fēr-ērē*, &c.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:

Affēro (ad, fero),	attūll,	afferrē,	allātum,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstūll,	auferrē,	ablātum,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extūll,	efferrē,	ēlātum,	carry out.
Infēro (in, fero),	intūll,	inferrē,	illātum,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtūll,	offerrē,	oblātum,	present.
Prōfēro (prō, fero),	prōtūll,	prōferrē,	prōlātum,	carry forward.
Rēfēro (re, fero),	{ rētūll rettūll }	rēferrē,	rēlātum,	bring back.

§ 115. VI. Ědo, ědī, ědĕrĕ or essĕ, ěsum,—to eat.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE
1. <i>Present.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
Ěd-o	Ěd-am or ěd-im	S. Ěd-ī	Ěd-ĕrim
Ěd-is or ěs	Ěd-ās or ěd-is	Ěd-istī	Ěd-ĕrīs
Ěd-īt or est	Ěd-āt or ěd-īt	Ěd-īt	Ěd-ĕrīt
Ěd-imūs	Ěd-amūs or ěd-imūs	P. Ěd-imūs	Ěd-ĕrimūs
Ěd-itīs or estīs	Ěd-ātīs or ěd-itīs	Ěd-istīs	Ěd-ĕrītīs
Ěd-unt	Ěd-ant or ěd-int	Ěd-erunt or -ĕrĕ	Ěd-ĕrint
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>	
Ěd-ĕbam	Ěd-ĕrem or essem	S. Ěd-ĕram	Ěd-issēm
Ěd-ĕbās	Ěd-ĕrēs or essēs	Ěd-ĕrās	Ěd-issēs
Ěd-ĕbāt	Ěd-ĕrĕt or essĕt	Ěd-ĕrāt	Ěd-issĕt
Ěd-ĕbāmūs	Ěd-ĕrēmūs or essēmūs	P. Ěd-ĕrāmūs	Ěd-issēmūs
Ěd-ĕbātīs	Ěd-ĕrĕtīs or essĕtīs	Ěd-ĕrātīs	Ěd-issĕtīs
Ěd-ĕbant	Ěd-ĕrent or essent	Ěd-ĕrant	Ěd-issent
3. <i>Future.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
Ěd-am		S. Ěd-ĕro	
Ěd-ēs		Ěd-ĕrīs	
Ěd-ĕt		Ěd-ĕrīt	
Ěd-ĕmūs		P. Ěd-ĕrimūs	
Ěd-ĕtīs		Ěd-ĕrītīs	
Ěd-ĕnt		Ěd-ĕrint	

	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	Ěd-ĕ or es Ěd-ītĕ or estĕ
<i>Future.</i>	Ěd-ītō or esto Ěd-ītōtĕ or estōtĕ Ěd-unto
	INFINITIVE.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Ěd-ĕrĕ or essĕ
<i>Perfect.</i>	Ěd-issĕ
<i>Future.</i>	Ěsūrus (a, um) essĕ

	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Ěd-ens
<i>Future.</i>	Ěsūrūs (ā, um)
	SUPINES.
	Ěsum
	Ěsū
	GERUND.
<i>Gen.</i>	Ěd-endī, &c.

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular : only *estūr* is used instead of *ědītūr*, and *essētūr* instead of *ědĕrētūr*. The Perfect Participle is *ěsus*.

Obs. 2. The compound *cōmĕdo*, *eat up*, is conjugated in the same way : as; *cōmĕdīs* or *cōmĕs*; *cōmĕdīt* or *cōmĕst*, &c.

§ 116. VII. Ēo, īvī, īrē, ītum,—to go.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Ē-o	E-am		S	Ī-vī or Ī-i	Ī-vērim or Ī-ērim	
	Ī-s	E-ās			Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vērīs &c.	
	Ī-t	E-āt			Ī-vīt &c.	Ī-vērīt &c.	
P.	Ī-mūs	E-āmūs		P.	Ī-vīmūs &c.	Ī-vērimūs &c.	
	Ī-tīs	E-ātīs			Ī-vistīs &c.	Ī-vērītīs &c.	
	E-unt	E-ant			Ī-vērunt &c.	Ī-vērīnt &c.	
				or Ī-vērē			
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	Ī-bam	Ī-rem		S.	Ī-vēram or Ī-eram	Ī-vissem, Ī-issem or Ī-ssem	
	Ī-bās	Ī-rēs			Ī-vērās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.	
	Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt			Ī-vērāt &c.	Ī-vissēt &c.	
P.	Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs		P.	Ī-vērāmūs &c.	Ī-vissēmūs &c.	
	Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs			Ī-vērātīs &c.	Ī-vissētīs &c.	
	Ī-bant	Ī-rent			Ī-vērant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.	
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	Ī-bo			S.	Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro		
	Ī-bīs				Ī-vērīs &c.		
	Ī-bīt				Ī-vērīt &c.		
P.	Ī-bīmūs			P.	Ī-vērimūs &c.		
	Ī-bītīs				Ī-vērītīs &c.		
	Ī-bunt				Ī-vērīnt &c.		

IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Ī
	Ī-tē
Future.	Ī-to
	Ī-to
	Ī-tōtē
	Ē-unto

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.	Ī-rē
Perfect.	Ī-vissē, iissē or issē
Future.	Ī-tūrus (a, um) essē

PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect.	Ī-ens (Gen. e-untīs)
Future.	Ī-tūrus (ā, um)

GERUND.

Gen.	E-undi, &c.
------	-------------

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: *as*, *eo*, *eunt*, *eam*, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. INDIC.: *Itūr*, *Ībātūr*, *Ībītūr*, *Ītum est*, &c. SUBJ.: *eātūr*, *Īrētūr*, *Ītum sīt*, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of *eo* usually take *ī*, rarely *ivi*, in the Perfect Tenses: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*, makes *ādī*, *ādīeram*, *ādīissem*, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *eo*, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*; Pass.: *ādeor*, *ādīris*, *ādītūr*, *ādīmūr*, *ādīmīnī*, *ādeuntūr*, &c.

Obs. 5. *Ambio*, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find *ambiēbam*, but occasionally *ambībam* (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund *ambiendi*, &c. The Perf. Participle is *ambītus* (Ov. Met. l. 37), though the Verbal Substantive is *ambītus*.

§ 117. VIII. Queo, quīvī, quīrē, quītum,—to be able.

§ 118. IX. Nēqueo, nēquīvī, nēquīrē, nēquītum,—to be unable.

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like *ēo*, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative *non quīs*, *non quīt* are used instead of *nēquīs*, *nēquīt*.

§ 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—*Fio*, to become, or be made, *vāpulo*, to be beaten, *vēneo*, to be sold, are Passive in their signification and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives*.

1. *Fio*, factūs sum, fiērī,—to become or be made.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Fi-o	Fi-am	S.	Factūs sum	Factūs sim		
	Fi-s	Fi-ās		Factūs ēs	Factūs sīs		
	Fi-t or fi-t	Fi-āt		Factūs est	Factūs sīt		
P.	[Fi-mūs]	Fi-āmūs	P.	Factī sūmūs	Factī simūs		
	[Fi-tīs]	Fi-ātīs		Factī estīs	Factī sītīs		
	Fi-unt	Fi-ant		Factī sunt	Factī sint		
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	Fi-ēbam	Fi-ērem	S.	Factūs eram	Factūs essem		
	Fi-ebās	Fi-ērēs		Factūs erās	Factūs essēs		
	Fi-ebāt	Fi-ērēt		Factūs erāt	Factūs essēt		
P.	Fi-ebāmūs	Fi-ērēmūs	P.	Factī erāmūs	Factī essēmūs		
	Fi-ebātīs	Fi-ērētīs		Factī erātīs	Factī essētīs		
	Fi-ebant	Fi-erent		Factī erant	Factī essent		
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	Fi-am		S.	Factūs ero			
	Fi-ēs			Factūs erīs			
	Fi-ēt			Factūs erīt			
P.	Fi-ēmūs		P.	Factī erimūs			
	Fi-ētīs			Factī erītīs			
	Fi-ent			Factī erunt			

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present	Fi, fi-tō	Perfect.	Factūs (ā, um)
INFINITIVE.		Gerundive.	Fāciendūs (ē, um)
Imperfect.	Fi-ērī		
Perfect.	Factus (a, um) esse		
Future.	Factum irī		

Obs. 1. *Fio* is used as the Passive of *fācio*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fio* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r*.

Obs. 3. The forms *fimūs* and *fitīs* are doubtful.

2. *Vāpūlo, vāpūlavī, to be beaten*, is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of *Verbēro*.

3. *Vēneo, venīvi, vēnitum (or vēnum), to be sold*, is a compound of the supine *vēnum* and the verb *eo*, and is used as the passive of *Vendo*.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives*, because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in form. They are likewise called *Semi deponents*, because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fesus sum, fidēre,</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

Obs. The four following verbs use also the Perfect Participle Passive in a active sense: *jūro, jūrātus, having sworn*; *coeno, coenātus, having dined*; *prandeo, pransus, having breakfasted*; *pōto, pōtus, having drunk*.

CHAPTER XX.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. <i>Coepī,</i>	<i>I began.</i>
II. <i>Mēmīnī,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
III. <i>Ōdī,</i>	<i>I hate.</i>
IV. <i>Nōvī,</i>	<i>I know.</i>

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepī</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Ōdī</i>	<i>Nōvī</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Ōdēram</i>	<i>Nōveram</i>
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	<i>Coepēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Ōdēro</i>	<i>Nōvēro</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepērim</i>	<i>Mēmīnērim</i>	<i>Ōdērim</i>	<i>Nōvērim</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissem</i>	<i>Mēmīnissem</i>	<i>Ōdissem</i>	<i>Nōvissem</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Mēmēnto</i> <i>Mēmēntōtē</i>	(wanting.)
----------------	------------	------------------------------------	------------

INFINITIVE

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissē</i>	<i>Mēmīnissē</i>	<i>Ōdissē</i>	<i>Nōvissē</i>
-----------------	-----------------	------------------	---------------	----------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	<i>Coeptūrūs</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Ōsūrūs</i>
----------------	------------------	------------	---------------

Obs. 1. Instead of *coepi* and its Tenses, the Passive *coeptus sum, &c.*, is used before an Infinitive Passive: *as, urbs aedificārī coepta est, the city began to be built.*

Obs. 2. *Novi* is properly the perfect of *Nosco, to learn to know.*

§ 121. V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>				<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	
S.	Aio	—	—	S.	Aiēbam	—	—
	Ais	Aiās	—		Aiēbās	—	—
	Ait	Aiāt	—		Aiēbāt	—	—
P.	—	—	—	P.	Aiēbāmūs	—	—
	—	—	—		Aiēbātīs	—	—
	Aiunt	Aiant	—		Aiēbant	—	—

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

Aiens.

Obs. The form *aisnē*, *sayest thou?* is often contracted into *ain'*.

§ 122. VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Inquam		<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	Inquiēbam
	Inquis		Inquiēbās	
	Inquit		Inquiēbāt	
	Inquimūs		Inquiēbāmūs	
	Inquitīs		Inquiēbātīs	
	Inquiunt		Inquiēbant	
<i>Future.</i>	—		<i>Perfect.</i>	—
	Inquiēs		Inquistī	
	Inquiēt			Inquit

IMPERATIVE.

Present. Inquē | *Future. 2 Pers.* Inquīto

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present. S.</i>		Fārē	
Fātūr	—	—	—	PARTICIPLES.			
					<i>Imperfect.</i>	Fantīs &c.	(without a
Fābōr, fābitūr	—	—	—	<i>Perfect.</i>	Fātūs (ā, um)		
					<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fandūs (ā, um)	
Fātus sum &c.	Fātus sim &c.	—	—	SUPINE — Fātū.			
					GERUND—Fandī &c.		
Fātūs eram	Fātūs essem						

§ 124. VIII. Salvē, *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* salvē, salvētě, salvěto; in the *Infin.* salvērě; and in the *Future* salvēbīs.

IX. Āvē (hāvē), *hail!* is found in the *Imperat.* āvē āvētě, āvēto; and in the *Infin.* āvērě.

X. Āpāgě, *begone!* (the only form).

XI. Cědo, *pl.* (cěditě) cettě, *give me, tell me,* are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. Quacso, *I entreat,* quacsūmūs, *we entreat,* are the only forms used in this sense.

CHAPTER XXI.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

Děcět, děcūit, děcērě,	<i>it is seemly.</i>
Děděcět, děděcūit, děděcērě,	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
Lībět, lībūit & lībītum est, lībērě,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Lícět, līcūit & līcītum est, līcērě,	<i>it is lawful.</i>
Līquět, līquērě,	<i>it is clear.</i>
Mīsērět or mīsērētūr, mīsērītum est, mīsērērě.	<i>it excites pity.</i>
Ōportět, ōportūit, ōportērě,	<i>it behoves.</i>
Pīgět, pīgūit & pīgītum est, pīgērě,	<i>it vexes.</i>
Plācět, plācūit or plācītum est, plācērě,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Poenītět, poenītūit, poenītērě,	<i>it causes sorrow.</i>
Pūdět, pūdūit or pūdītum est, pūdērě,	<i>it shames.</i>
Taedět, (pertaesum est,) taedērě,	<i>it disgusts.</i>

Obs. All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandīnāt, l,	<i>it hails.</i>
Ningīt, ninxīt, ningērě,	<i>it snows.</i>
Plūit, plūit or plūvīt, plūērě,	<i>it rains.</i>

Tónát, tónuít, tónaré,	<i>it thunders.</i>
Lūcescít, (illuxít,) lūcescĕrĕ,	<i>it becomes light.</i>
Vespĕrascít, vespĕrāvít, vespĕrascĕrĕ,	<i>evening approaches.</i>

Obs. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally : as, accidít, *it happens* ; expĕdít, *it is advantageous*, &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently pŭdĕt, for example, has only the following forms :

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	Pŭdĕt	Pŭdeāt	} Pŭdĕrĕ
<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	Pŭdĕbāt	Pŭdĕrĕt	
<i>Future.</i>	Pŭdĕbít	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>	Pŭduít	Pŭduĕrít	} Pŭduissĕ
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	Pŭduĕrāt	Pŭduissĕt	
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	Pŭduĕrít	—	—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses :

Pŭdĕt mĕ,	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
Pŭdĕt tĕ,	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
Pŭdĕt eum,	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
Pŭdĕt nŏs,	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
Pŭdĕt vŏs,	<i>it shames you, or you are ashamed.</i>
Pŭdĕt eŏs,	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally : as,

Currítŭr, itŭr, ventum est &c. (*They*) run, (*they*) go, (*they*) came, etc.

CHAPTER XXII.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in ĕ, ŏ, tĕr, itŭs, tim. Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in ĕ, ŏ, tĕr, have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in ius.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
doctus,	<i>learned,</i>	doctē	doctius	doctissimē
aeger,	<i>sick,</i>	aegrē (<i>with difficulty</i>)	aegrus	aegerrimē
fortis,	<i>brave,</i>	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	<i>like,</i>	similiter	similius	simillimē
acer,	<i>keen,</i>	acriter	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	<i>lucky,</i>	feliciter	felicus	felicissimē
prudens,	<i>prudent,</i>	prudenter	prudētius	prudētissimē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bonus,	<i>good,</i>	benē	melius	optimē
malus,	<i>bad,</i>	malē	pejus	peessimē
multus,	<i>much,</i>	multum	plus	plurimum
magnus,	<i>great,</i>	—	magis	maximē
propinquus,	<i>near,</i>	propē	propius	proximē
(prō) prior,	<i>before,</i>	—	prius	primum & primō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared:—

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
diū,	<i>for a long time,</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
nūper,	<i>lately,</i>	—	nūperrimē
saepē,	<i>often,</i>	saepius	saepissimē
sēcus,	<i>otherwise,</i>	sēcus	—
tempēri (tempōri),	<i>timely,</i>	tempērius	—

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns: as,

tempōri, tempēri,	from tempus,	<i>seasonably</i> (see § 131).
grātis (grātis),	„ grātia,	<i>for thanks, i. e. for nothing.</i>
ingrātis (ingrātis),	„ ingrātia,	<i>without thanks, against any</i>
fōrās, fōris,	fōra (obs.) = fōris,	<i>abroad. [one's will.</i>
noctū,	„ noctus (obs.) = nox,	<i>by night.</i>
diū,	old abl. of diēs,	<i>by day.*</i>
perpēram, acc. sing. f. of perpērus,		<i>wrongly.</i>

* In this sense only in the phrase noctu dinque (raro).

CHAPTER XXIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

§ 135. I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ad,	to.	Öb,	on account of.
Adversüs,	} opposite, towards.	Pēnes,	in the power of.
Adversum,		Pēr,	through.
Antě,	before.	Pöně,	behind.
Apūd,	near.	Post,	after.
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetěr,	beside.
Circitěr,	about.	Pröpě,	near.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Proptěr,	on account of.
Contrā,	against.	Sēcundum,	following, along, in accordance with.
Ergā,	towards (of the	Suprā,	above.
Extrā,	outside of. [mind].	Trans,	across.
Infrā,	below.	Ultrā,	on the farther side of.
Intěr,	between, among.	Versüs,	} towards.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versum,	
Juxtā,	hard by, beside.		

Obs. *Versüs* is always placed after the Accusative: as, Rōmam versüs, towards Rome.

§ 136. II. *With the Ablative alone.*

A, āb, or abs,	by or from.	Ex or ē,	out of.
Absquē (rare),	without.	Prae,	before.
Cōram,	in the presence of.	Prō,	in front of, before.
Cum,	with.	Sině,	without.
Dē,	down from, from.	Těnüs,	reaching to, as far as.

Obs. 1. *Ab* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ā* and *āb* before consonants; *abs* very seldom except in the phrase *abs te*.

Obs. 2. *Ex* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ex* and *ē* before consonants.

Obs. 3. *Těnüs* is always placed after the Ablative: as, pectōrě těnüs, as far as the breast.

§ 137. III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

In,	in, into.	Süpěr,	over.
Süb,	up to, under.	Subtěr,	under.
	Clam,		without the knowledge of.

In and *Sub* with the Acc. answer the question *Whither?* with the Abl., the question *Where?*

§ 138. Obs. 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antě, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praeter, propter.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, *alŏquor* from *ad* and *lŏquor*.

Ab, abs. *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a*: as, *ā-moveo*, *ā-vĕho*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fĕro*, *au-fŭgio*. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, *abs-cĕdo*, *abs-tineo*.

Ad remains unchanged before *d*, *j*, *m*, *v*: as, *ad-do*, *ad-jāceo*, *ad-mĭror*, *ad-vĕho*. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, *ac-cĕdo*, *af-fĕro*, *ag-gĕro*, *ap-pŏno*, *ac-quĭro*, *as-sisto*, *as-sŭmo*. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn*: as, *a-spicio*, *a-gnosco*.

Com (instead of *cum*) remains unchanged before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *com-pŏno*, *com-bĭbo*, *com-mitto*. The *m* is assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: as, *col-lĭgo*, *con-necto*, *cor-rĭpio*. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, *con-fĕro*, *con-gĕro*, *con-trāho*. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h*: as, *co-ālesco*, *co-eo*, *co-haereo*.

Ex remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*: as, *ex-eo*, *ex-clĭpio*, *ex-pŏno*, *ex-quĭro*, *ex-solvo*, *ex-trāho*. The *x* is assimilated before *f*: as, *ef-fĕro*. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, *ĕ-lĭgo*, *ĕ-jĭcio*.

In becomes *im* before the labials *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *im-pŏno*, *im-buo*, *im-mitto*. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r*: as, *il-lŭdo*, *ir-rumpo*. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

Inter undergoes assimilation only in the verb *intel-lĭgo* and its derivatives.

Ob undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*: as, *oc-curro*, *of-fĕro*, *og-gĕro*, *op-pŏno*.

Per undergoes assimilation only in *pel-lĭcio* and its derivatives.

Sub undergoes assimilation before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and often before *r*: as, *suc-curro*, *suf-ficio*, *sug-gĕro*, *sum-mitto*, *sup-pŏno*, *sur-rĭpio*.

Trans is frequently shortened into *trā*: as, *trā-dŭco*, *trā-jĭcio*.

Obs. 3. *Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

Amb, *around*: as, *amb-io*, *to go around*; *amb-lgo*, *to wander around*. The *b* is dropped before *p*: as, *am-pŭto*, *to cut around* or *away*; *am-plector*, *to twine around* or *embrace*. *Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f*: as, *an-ceps*, *two-headed*; *an-quĭro*, *to seek around*; *an-fractus*, *a bending*.

Dis or *dĭ*, *in different directions*: as, *dis-pŏno*, *to set in different parts*; *dĭ-rĭpio*, *to tear in pieces*. Before *f*, *dis* becomes *dĭf*: as, *dĭf-fundo*, *to pour in different directions*.

Rĕ or *rĕd*, *back*: as, *rĕ-mitto*, *to send back*; *rĕd-co*, *to go back*.

Sĕ, *aside*: as, *sĕ-dŭco*, *to lead aside*; *sĕ-cŭrus*, *free from care*.

CHAPTER XXIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes :

I. CONNECTIVE.

Ět,	} <i>and.</i>		Něquě, něc,	} <i>neither, nor.</i>	
Atquě, āc,			Něvě, neu,		} <i>or if.</i>
Quě,			Sivě, seu,		
Aut,	} <i>either, or.</i>		Necnōn,	} <i>also.</i>	
Věl, vě,			Etiam,		Quōque,

Obs. 1. Quě and vě are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mārīquě, *by land and by sea*; plus minusvě, *more or less*. Such words are called enclitics.

Obs. 2. Ac, vě, něc, neu, seu are contractions respectively of atquě, věl, něquě, něvě, sě.

Obs. 3. Ac is never used before vowels or h: atruč occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mōdo (solum) sed (vērum) ětiam, *not only but also*; quum (tum) tum, *both and*.

II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sěd,	} <i>but.</i>		Tāměn,	} <i>yet, nevertheless.</i>
Antem,			Věrum, vēro,	
Ast, at,			Ěnimvēro.	} <i>but indeed.</i>
Atque,			Attāměn,	

III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī,	} <i>if.</i>		Dum,	} <i>provided that.</i>
Nīsi, nī,			Mōdō,	
Sin,			Dummōdo,	

IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi,	} <i>although.</i>		Quamvīs,	} <i>however much, al-</i>
Ětiamsi,			Quum,	
Tāmetsi,			Quīdem,	} <i>indeed.</i>
Licēt,			Ůt,	
Quanguam				

V. CAUSAL.

Quum,	} <i>whereas, since.</i>		Nam,	} <i>for.</i>	
Quīā, quōd,			Ěnim,		
Quōniam,			Ětēnim,		} <i>and in fact.</i>
Quandōquīdem,					

VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Idcirco, Ideo, Igitur,	} <i>therefore.</i>	Itaque, Quocirca, Quare, Quapropter,	} <i>and so, accordingly</i> <i>wherefore.</i>

VII. FINAL.

Ut, Quo, Quin, Quominus,	} <i>that, in order that.</i> <i>that not.</i>	Nē, Nēvē, neu,	} <i>that not, lest.</i> <i>and that . . . not.</i>

VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antequam, Priusquam, Postquam,	} <i>before that.</i> <i>after that.</i>	Donec, Quoad, Dum,	} <i>so long as, until.</i>

Sīmulatque (ac), *as soon as.*

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

CHAPTER XXV.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise : ō! eu! eccē! pāpae! ātat! etc.
2. Of grief : ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vas! etc.
3. Of joy : io! ha! ēvoe! eu (eugē)! etc.
4. Of disgust : phu! āpāgē! etc.
5. Of adjuration : prō (proh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercle (mehercūle, hercle, etc.), pol, ēdēpol, mēdīusfidīus and the like.

APPENDIX A.

CHAPTER XXVI.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENERAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. 1. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers* are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees* are *Feminine*.

Obs. In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, *ăquŭla, eagle, and vulpes, fox,* are always *feminine* ; while *lĕpus, hare, mus, mouse, and passer, sparrow,* are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπι κούριος).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*
Fās, nĕfās, nihĭl, instār,
are *Neuter*.

fās,	<i>permitted by heaven.</i>		nihĭl,	<i>nothing.</i>
nĕfās,	<i>not permitted by heaven.</i>		instār,	<i>resemblance.</i>

4. *Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as,*
Cĭvis, conjux, săcerdōs, testis
are *Common*.

cĭvis,	<i>a citizen (male or female).</i>		săcerdōs,	<i>a priest or priestess.</i>
conjux,	<i>a husband or wife.</i>		testis,	<i>a witness (male or female).</i>

SPECIAL RULES.

GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

§ 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION

Principal Rule.

A and ĕ are *Feminine,*

As and ĕs are *Masculine.*

Exceptions.

1. Names of Males in a are Masculine: as,
 scriba, a clerk.
 nauta, a sailor.
 incōla, an inhabitant.
2. Most Rivers in a are Masculine (§ 141, 1): as,
 Addua, the *Adda*.

Garumna, the *Garonne*.
 Sēquāna, the *Seine*.
 Also *Hādria*, the Adriatic Sea.

But the following are Feminine:
 Albūla, ancient name of *Tiber*.
 Allia, in Latium.
 Matrōna, the *Marne*.

§ 143. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

Us and er are Masculine,
 Um is Neuter.

Exceptions.

1. *Trees* and *Towns* in us follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2): as,
 ulmus, an elm-tree.
 Cōrinthus, Corinth.
2. The following are also Feminine:
 alvus, the belly.
 cōlus, a distaff.
 hūmus, the ground.
 vannus, a winnowing fan.

And some Greek words: as,
 mēthōdus, method.
 arctos, the constellation Bear.
 carbūsus, fine flax.

3. The following are Neuter
 virus, poison.
 pēlāgus, the sea.
 vulgus, the common people.

Obs. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.

§ 144. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

Preliminary Rules.

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions: thus, pāter, a father; Tībēris, the *Tiber*; Libs, a S. W. wind, are Masculine: while mūlier, a woman; sōror, a sister; Vēnus, the goddess of beauty and grace, are Feminine.

2. All Abstract Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting *qualities*, are Feminine : as,

hūmīlitas,	<i>lowness, humility,</i>	from	hūmīlis.
suāvītas,	<i>sweetness,</i>	„	suāvis.
altītūdo,	<i>height,</i>	„	altus.
fortītūdo,	<i>bravery,</i>	„	fortis.
virtūs,	<i>manliness, virtue,</i>	„	vir.

3. Substantives in *io* (*tio, sio*), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine : as,

expugnātio,	<i>taking by storm,</i>	from	expugno.
mūnītio,	<i>the act of fortifying,</i>	„	mūnio.
dēcessio,	<i>departure,</i>	„	dēcēdo.
largītio,	<i>bribery,</i>	„	largior.
ōpinio,	<i>thinking, opinion,</i>	„	ōpinor.
contāgio,	<i>touching, contagion,</i>	„	contango (root TAG).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as *rēgio, a district* (from *rēgo*); *lēgio, a legion* (from *lēgo*).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a *permanent* action or condition, in *go* and *do* : as,

prūrigo,	<i>itching,</i>	from	prūrio.
cūpido,	<i>a desire, passion,</i>	„	cūpio.
vertigo,	<i>giddiness,</i>	„	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

First Principal Rule (Masculine).

O, or (ōris), os, and er,

Es, increasing *short* in Genitive,

are *Masculine*.—EXAMPLES : Leo, ōnis, *a lion*; dōlōr, ōris, *pain*; flōs, flōris, *a flower*; ansēr, ēris, *a goose*; pēs, pēdis, *a foot*.

Exceptions

1. In o.

Feminine are *do, go, io*,
To these add *cāro, ēcho*,
But Masculine are *harpāgo*,
Ordo, cardo, scīpio,

Stellio, septentrio,
Margo, ligo, pūgio,
Titio, pāpilio,
Unio, curcūlio,
Lastly *vespertilio*.

cāro,	carnis,	<i>flesh.</i>	margo,	īnis,	<i>a border or edge</i>
ēcho,	ēchūs,	<i>an echo.</i>	līgo,	ōnis,	<i>a spade.</i>
harpāgo,	ōnis,	<i>a grappling-hook.</i>	pūgio,	ōnis,	<i>a dagger.</i>
ordo,	īnis,	<i>a row.</i>	tītio,	ōnis,	<i>a fire-brand.</i>
cardo,	īnis,	<i>a hinge.</i>	pāpilio,	ōnis,	<i>a butterfly.</i>
scīpio,	ōnis,	<i>a staff.</i>	ūnio,	ōnis,	<i>a pearl.</i>
stellio,	ōnis,	<i>a lizard.</i>	curcūlio,	ōnis,	<i>a weevil.</i>
septentrio,	ōnis,	<i>the north.</i>	vespertilio,	ōnis,	<i>a bat.</i>

2. In or.

Neuter Nouns which end in or
Are only four :

Marmor, aequor, ādor, cōr.
Fēminīni gēnēris
Is only *arbor (arbōris)*.

marmor, ōris, marble.
*aequor, ōris, the level surface of
the sea.*

ādor, ōris, spelt.
cōr, cordis, the heart.
arbor, ōris, a tree.

3. In os.

Feminine are *cōs* and *dōs*.

Neuter Nouns are *ōs* and *ōs*.

cōs, cōtis, a whetstone.
dōs, dōtis, a dowry.

ōs, ossis, a bone.
ōs, ōris, the mouth.

4. In er.

Many Neuters end in er:
Vēr, cādāver, ūter, tūber,
Cīcer, pīper, sīser, ūber,

Zingīber, pāpāver, sūber,
Acer, sīler, verber, spinther.
Feminine is only *linter*.

vēr, vēris, the spring.
cādāver, ēris, a corpse.
ūter, ūtērīris, a journey.
tūber, ēris, a swelling.
cīcer, ēris, the chick-pea.
pīper, ēris, pepper.
sīser, ēris, a plant (skirret).
ūber, ēris, an udder.

zingīber, ēris, ginger.
pāpāver, ēris, the poppy.
sūber, ēris, the cork-tree.
ācer, ēris, the maple.
sīler, ēris, a withy.
verber, ēris, a whip, scourge.
spinther, ēris, a kind of bracelet.
linter, tris (f.), a wherry.

5. In es, increasing in the Genitive.

Feminine are *rēquiēs*,

Quiēs, mercēs, mergēs, tēgēs,
Compes, iniquiēs, and sēgēs.

quiēs, ētis, } rest.
rēquiēs, ētis, }
iniquiēs, ētis, restlessness.
mercēs, ōdis, wages.

mergēs, ūtis, a sheaf of corn.
tēgēs, ētis, a mat.
compes. ēdis, a fetter.
sēgēs, ētis, standing corn.

§ 145. Second Principal Rule (Feminine).

X, as, aus, and is,

S preceded by a consonant,

Es not increasing in Genitive,

are *Feminine*.—EXAMPLES: *Pax, pācis, peace*; *libertās, ātis, liberty*; *laus, laudis, praise*; *nāvis, is, a ship*; *urbs, urbis, a city*; *nūbēs, is, a cloud*.

*Exceptions.*1. In *x*.

Masculine are words in *ex* :
Feminine alone are *lex*,
Sūpellex, *cārex*, *ilex*, *nex*,

Masculine are *trādux*, *cālix*,
Phoenix too, as well as *fornix*.

lex, *lēgis*, *a law.*
sūpellex, *lectilis*, *furniture.*
cārex, *īcis*, *a kind of rush.*
ilex, *īcis*, *the scarlet oak.*
nex, *nēcis*, *violent death.*

trādux, *īcis*, *a vine-branch.*
cālix, *īcis*, *a cup.*
phoenix, *īcis*, *a fabulous bird.*
fornix, *īcis*, *an arch.*

2. In *as*.

Six Masculina end in *as* :
As (*assis*), *mās*, and *ēlēphās*,
Vās (*vādīs*), *gīgās*, *ādāmās*.

The Neuter Nouns which end
in *as*
Are *Vās* (*vāsīs*), *fās* and *nēfās*.

ās. *assis*, *a Roman coin.*
mās, *māris*, *a male.*
ēlēphās, *antis*, *an elephant.*
vās, *vādīs*, *a surety.*
gīgās, *antis*, *a giant.*

ādāmās, *antis*, *a diamond.*
vās, *vāsīs*, *a vessel.*
fās (indecl.), *permitted by heaven.*
nēfās (indecl.), *not permitted by*
 heaven.

3. In *is*.

Many Nouns which end in *is*
Are Masculini gēnēris :
Pānis, *piscis*, *crinis*, *finis*,
Ignis, *lāpis*, *pulvis*, *cīnis*,
Orbis, *amnis*, and *cānālis*,
Sanguis, *unguis*, *glis*, *annālis*,

Fascis, *axis*, *fūnis*, *ensis*,
Fustis, *vectis*, *vōmis*, *mensis*,
Vermis, *torris*, *cūcūmis*,
Postis, *follis*, *mūgīlis*,
Cassis, *caulis*, *callis*, *collis*,
Sentis, *torquis*, *pēnis*, *pollis*.

pānis, *is*, *bread.*
piscis, *is*, *a fish.*
crinis, *is*, *hair.*
finis, *is*, *an end.*
ignis, *is*, *fire.*
lāpis, *īdis*, *a stone.*
pulvis, *ōris*, *dust.*
cīnis, *ōris*, *ashes.*
orbis, *is*, *a circle.*
amnis, *is*, *a river.*
cānālis, *is*, *a conduit.*
sanguis, *īnis*, *blood.*
unguis, *is*, *a finger- or toe-nail.*
glis, *īris*, *a dormouse.*
annālis (usu. plur.), *a year-book.*
fascis, *is*, *a bundle.*
axis, *is*, *an axle.*
fūnis, *is*, *a rope.*
ensis, *is*, *a sword.*

fustis, *is*, *a cudgel.*
vectis, *is*, *a lever.*
vōmis, *(more freq. vōmer) ōris*, } *a ploughshare.*
mensis, *is*, *a month.*
vermis, *is*, *a worm.*
torris, *is*, *a firebrand.*
cūcūmis, *is*, and *ōris*, *a cucumber.*
postis, *is*, *a doorpost.*
follis, *is*, *a pair of bellows.*
mūgīlis (usu. *mūgil*), *a mullet.*
cassis (plur. *im*), *a net.*
caulis, *is*, *a stalk.*
callis, *is*, *a path.*
collis, *is*, *a hill.*
sentis, *is*, *a bramble.*
torquis (also *es*), *is*, *a chain for the*
pēnis, *is*, *a tail. [neck.*
pollis, *īnis*, *fine flour, meal.*

4. In *s* preceded by a consonant :

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*,
Hydrops, *torrens*, *gryps*, & *mons*,

Adeps, *rūdens*, *ōriens*,
Dens and *trīdens*, *occīdens*

<i>pons</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a bridge.</i>	<i>ādeps</i> ,	<i>īpis</i> ,	<i>fat.</i>
<i>fons</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a fountain.</i>	<i>rūdens</i> ,	<i>entis</i> ,	<i>a cable.</i>
<i>hydrops</i> ,	<i>ōpis</i> ,	<i>dropsy.</i>	<i>ōriens</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>the east.</i>
<i>torrens</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a torrent.</i>	<i>dens</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a tooth.</i>
<i>gryps</i> ,	<i>grīphis</i> ,	<i>a griffin.</i>	<i>trīdens</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a trident.</i>
<i>mons</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>a mountain.</i>	<i>occīdens</i> ,	<i>tis</i> ,	<i>the west.</i>

5. In *ēs*.

Masculines which end in *ēs*
 Are *verrēs* and *ācīnācēs*.

verrēs, *is*, *a boar-pig.*
ācīnācēs, *is*, *a scimitar.*

§ 146. *Third Principal Rule (Neuter).*

A, e, and c,

L, n, and t,

Ar, ur, and us,

are *Neuter*.—EXAMPLES: *Poēmă*, *ătis*, *a poem*; *măře*, *is*, *the sea*; *lac*, *lactis*, *milk*; *ănimăl*, *ălis*, *an animal*; *nōmēn*, *īnis*, *a name*; *căpūt*, *căpītis*, *a head*; *fulgūr*, *ūris*, *lightning*; *corpūs*, *ōris*, *a body*

*Exceptions.*1. In *l*.

Masculines in *l* are *mūgīl*,
Sōl and *consūl*, *sāl* and *pūgīl*.

mūgīl, *lis*, *a mullet.* | *sāl*, *sālis*, *salt.*
sōl, *sōlis*, *the sun.* | *pūgīl*, *lis*, *a*
consūl, *lis*, *a consul.* | *boxer*

2. In *n*.

Masculines in *n* are *rēn*,
splēn,
Pectēn, *liēn*, *attāgēn*.

rēn, *rēnis* (usu. in pl.), *the kidney*
splēn, *ēnis*, *the spleen.*
pectēn, *īnis*, *a comb.*
liēn, *ēnis*, *the spleen.*
attāgēn, *ēnis*, *a heathcock.*

3. In *ur*.

Masculines in *ur* are *furfur*,
Astur *vultur*, *fūr*, and *turtur*.

furfur, *ūris*, *bran.* | *fūr*, *ūris*, *a thief.*
astur, *ūris*, *a hawk.* | *turtur*, *ūris*, *a*
vultur, *ūris*, *a vulture.* | *turtle-dove.*

4. In *us*.

The Masculines which end in *us*
 Are *lēpus* (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*.

lēpus, *ōris*, *a hare.*
mūs, *mūris*, *a mouse.*

5. In *us*.

The Feminines which end in *us* | *Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sālūs,*
 Are *Jūventūs, virtūs, servītūs,* | Add *pecūs (pēcūdis)* and *pālūs.*

<i>jūventūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>youth.</i>		<i>incūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>an anvil.</i>
<i>virtūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>virtue.</i>		<i>sālūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>safety.</i>
<i>servītūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>slavery.</i>		<i>pecūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>cattle.</i>
<i>sēnectūs,</i>	<i>ūtis,</i>	<i>old-age.</i>		<i>pālūs,</i>	<i>ūdis,</i>	<i>a marsh.</i>
<i>tellūs,</i>	<i>ūris</i>	<i>the earth.</i>				

§ 147. IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

Principal Rule.

Us is Masculine.

U is Neuter.

Exceptions.

Feminines which end in *us*: | *Dōmus, nūrus, socrus, ānus,*
Trībus, ācuš, porticus, | *Idūs (idūim)* and *mānus.*

<i>trībus,</i>	<i>a tribe</i> (a division of the Roman people).		<i>socrus,</i>	<i>a mother-in-law.</i>
<i>ācus,</i>	<i>a needle.</i>		<i>ānus,</i>	<i>an old-woman.</i>
<i>porticus,</i>	<i>a portico.</i>		<i>idūs (pl.),</i>	<i>the Ides</i> (a division of the Roman month).
<i>dōmus,</i>	<i>a house.</i>		<i>mānūs,</i>	<i>a hand.</i>
<i>nūrus,</i>	<i>a daughter-in-law.</i>			

§ 148. V. FIFTH DECLENSION.

Rule.

All are Feminine except *dies (mēridies)*, which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXVII.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES
OF VERBS.

I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvi*, *ātum*: *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

1.	Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpītum,	crēpāre,	<i>to creak.</i>
2.	Cūbo,	cūbui,	cūbītum,	cūbāre,	<i>to lie.</i>
3.	Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmītum,	dōmāre,	<i>to tame.</i>
4.	Sōno,	sōnui,	sōnītum,	sōnāre,	<i>to sound.</i>
5.	Vēto,	vētui,	vētītum,	vētāre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
6.	Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
7.	Mīco,	mīcui,	—	mīcāre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
8.	Plicō,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicītum, plicātum,	plicāre,	<i>to fold.</i>
9.	Frīco,	frīcui,	{ frīcātum, frictum,	frīcāre,	<i>to rub.</i>
10.	Sēco,	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,	<i>to cut.</i>
11.	{ Nēco (regular). Enēco,	{ ēnēcui, ēnēcāvi,	{ ēnectum, ēnēcātum,	ēnēcāre,	<i>to kill.</i>
12.	Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
13.	Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lāvātum, lautum, lōtum,	lāvāre,	<i>to wash.</i>
14.	Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
15.	Sto,	stētī,	stātum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

Obs. 1. *Do* in composition with prepositions of *two* syllables is the same: *as*,

circumdo, *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*, *circumdāre*, *to surround*.

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation: *as*,

addo, *addīdi*, *addītum*, *addēre*, *to put to to add*.

See § 159, No. 18.

Obs. 2. *Sto* in composition with prepositions of *two* syllables is the same: *as*,

circumsto, *circumstēti*, *circumstāre*, *to surround*.

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stētī*:

adsto, *adstētī*, *adstāre*, *to stand near*.

II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *ui* and *itum*: as, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:

1. Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

1.	<i>Dōceo</i> ,	<i>dōcui</i> ,	<i>doctum</i> ,	<i>dōcēre</i> ,	<i>to teach.</i>
2.	<i>Tēneo</i> ,	<i>tēnui</i> ,	<i>tentum</i> ,	<i>tēnēre</i> ,	<i>to hold.</i>
3.	<i>Misceo</i> ,	<i>miscui</i> ,	{ <i>mixtum</i> ,	<i>miscēre</i> ,	<i>to mix.</i>
			<i>mistum</i> ,		
4.	<i>Torreo</i> ,	<i>torrui</i> ,	<i>tostum</i> ,	<i>torrēre</i> ,	<i>to roast.</i>
5.	<i>Sorbeo</i> ,	{ <i>sorbui</i> ,	—	<i>sorbēre</i> ,	<i>to suck up.</i>
		<i>sorpsi</i> ,			
6.	<i>Censeo</i> ,	<i>censui</i> ,	<i>censum</i> ,	<i>censēre</i> ,	<i>to assess, think.</i>

§ 151.—2. Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

1.	<i>Dēleo</i> ,	<i>dēlēvi</i> ,	<i>dēlētum</i> ,	<i>dēlēre</i> ,	<i>to blot out, destroy.</i>
2.	<i>Fleo</i> ,	<i>flēvi</i> ,	<i>flētum</i> ,	<i>flēre</i> ,	<i>to weep.</i>
3.	<i>Neo</i> ,	<i>nēvi</i> ,	<i>nētum</i> ,	<i>nēre</i> ,	<i>to spin.</i>
4.	Pleo only in composition.				
	<i>Compleo</i> ,	<i>complēvi</i> ,	<i>complētum</i> ,	<i>complēre</i> ,	<i>to fill up.</i>
	Oleo only in composition.				
	<i>Abōleo</i> ,	<i>ābōlēvi</i> ,	<i>ābōlītum</i> ,	<i>ābōlēre</i> ,	<i>to abolish.</i>
	<i>Adōleo</i> ,	<i>ādōlēvi</i> ,	<i>adultum</i> ,	—	<i>to grow up.</i>
	(Adolesco,)				
5.	<i>Exōleo</i> ,	<i>exōlēvi</i> ,	<i>exōlētum</i> ,	—	<i>to grow old.</i>
	(Exolesco,)				
	<i>Obsōleo</i> ,	<i>obsolēvi</i> ,	<i>obsolētum</i> ,	—	<i>to grow out of use</i>
	(Obsolesco,)				

To this class may be added:

6.	<i>Cieo</i> ,	<i>cīvi</i> ,	<i>cītum</i> ,	<i>ciēre</i> ,	<i>to stir.</i>
----	---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------

§ 152.—3. Perfect—*i* (*di*). Supine—*sum*.

1.	<i>Prandeo</i> ,	<i>prandi</i> ,	<i>pransum</i> ,	<i>prandēre</i> ,	<i>to breakfast.</i>
2.	<i>Sēdeo</i> ,	<i>sēdi</i> ,	<i>sessum</i> ,	<i>sēdēre</i> ,	<i>to sit.</i>
3.	<i>Vīdeo</i> ,	<i>vīdi</i> ,	<i>vīsum</i> ,	<i>vīdēre</i> ,	<i>to see.</i>
4.	<i>Strīdeo</i> ,	<i>strīdi</i> ,	—	<i>strīdēre</i> ,	<i>to creak.</i>

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	<i>Mordeo</i> ,	<i>mōmordi</i> ,	<i>morsum</i> ,	<i>mordēre</i> ,	<i>to bite.</i>
6.	<i>Pendeo</i> ,	<i>pēpendi</i> ,	<i>pensum</i> ,	<i>pendēre</i> ,	<i>to hang.</i>
7.	<i>Spondeo</i> ,	<i>spōpōndi</i> ,	<i>sponsum</i> ,	<i>spondēre</i> ,	<i>to promise.</i>
8.	<i>Tondeo</i> ,	<i>tōtōndi</i> ,	<i>tonsum</i> ,	<i>tondēre</i> ,	<i>to shear.</i>

§ 153.—4. Perfect—*i* (*vi*). Supine—*tum*.

1.	<i>Cāveo</i> ,	<i>cāvi</i> ,	<i>cautum</i> ,	<i>cāvēre</i> ,	<i>to guard one's self.</i>
2.	<i>Fāveo</i> ,	<i>fāvi</i> ,	<i>fautum</i> ,	<i>fāvēre</i> ,	<i>to favour.</i>
3.	<i>Fōveo</i> ,	<i>fōvi</i> ,	<i>fōtum</i> ,	<i>fōvēre</i> ,	<i>to cherish.</i>
4.	<i>Mōveo</i> ,	<i>mōvi</i> ,	<i>mōtum</i> ,	<i>mōvēre</i> ,	<i>to move.</i>
5.	<i>Vōveo</i> ,	<i>vōvi</i> ,	<i>vōtum</i> ,	<i>vōvēre</i> ,	<i>to vow.</i>

Without Supine.

6. Pāveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvēre,	to fear.
7. Ferveo,	{fervi, ferbui,	—	fervēre,	to boil.
8. Connīveo,	{connīvi, connixi,	—	connīvēre,	to wink.

§ 154.—5. *Perfect—si. Supine—tum and sum.*

1. Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
2. Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
3. Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
4. Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
5. Haereo,	haesi,	hacsum,	haerēre,	to stick.
6. Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jūbēre,	to order.
7. Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānēre,	to remain.
8. Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre	to stroke.
9. Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
10. Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	to laugh.
11. Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
12. Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
13. Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	} to be cold.
14. Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
15. Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre	to shine.
16. Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	to be light.
17. Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	to grieve.
18. Turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	to swell.
19. Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.*

1. Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
2. Gaudeo,	gāvisus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
3. Sōleo,	sōlītus sum,	—	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

Obs. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines; and others have neither Perfects nor Supines.

III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1. Carpo	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	to pluck.
2. Glūbo.	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbēre,	to peel.
3. Nūbo	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbēre,	to marry.

4.	Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpere,	to creep.
5.	Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	to scratch.
6.	Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	to write.
7.	Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpere,	to crawl.

(b.) *Perfect—ui. Supine—tum or Itum.*

8.	Rāp-io,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpere,	to seize.
9.	{ Cumbo,				
	{ Incumbo,	incūbui,	incūbitum,	incumbēre,	to lie upon.
10.	Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpitum,	strēpere,	to make a noise.

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—tum, or wanting.*

11.	Cāp-io,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpere,	to take.
12.	Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpere,	to burst.
13.	Bībo,	bībi,	—	bībēre,	to drink.
14.	Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambēre,	to lick.
15.	Scābo,	scābi,	—	scābēre,	to scratch.

(d.) *Perfect—ivi. Supine—Itum, or wanting.*

16.	Cūp-io,	cūpivi,	cūpitum,	cūpere,	to desire.
17.	Sāp-io,	{ sāpivi, or }	—	sāpere,	to taste.
		{ sāpii, }			

§ 158.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—Cs, hs, and gs become z. G becomes c before t.

1.	Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcere,	to say.
2.	Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcere,	to lead.
3.	Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquere,	to cook.
4.	Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingere,	to surround.
5.	{ (Fligo, not used.)		—	—	to strike.
	{ Affligo,	afflīxi,	afflictum,	afflīgere,	to strike to the ground.
6.	Frigo,	frixi,	frictum, } frixum, }	frīgere,	to parch, to fry.
7.	Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungere,	to join.
8.	Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingere,	to lick.
9.	{ (Mungo, not used.)				
	{ Emungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungere,	to blow the nose
10.	Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangere,	to beat.
11.	Rēgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rēgere,	to direct, rule.
12.	{ (Spēcio, very seldom used.)				
	{ Aspīc-io,	aspēxi,	aspectum,	aspīcere,	to behold.
13.	Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgere,	to suck.
14.	Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tēgere,	to cover.
15.	{ Tingo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{ tingere,	to dip.
	{ Tinguo,			{ tinguere,	
16.	{ Ungo,	unxi,	unotum,	{ ungere,	to anoint.
	{ Unguo,			{ unguere,	

17.	{(Stinguo, not used.) Exstinguo, exstinxi,	extinctum,	extinguere,	to extinguish.	
18.	Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhère,	to drag.
19.	Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	vēhère,	to carry.
20.	{(Lāc-io, very seldom used.) Allīc-io,	allexi,	allectum,	allīcère,	to entice.
21.	Ango,	anxi,	—	angère,	to vex.
22.	Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningère,	to snow.
23.	Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figère,	to form, to invent.
24.	Mingo,	minxi,	minctum,	mingère,	to make water.
25.	Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingère,	to paint.
26.	Stringo,	strinxī,	strictum,	stringère,	to grasp.

(b.) Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

27.	Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergere,	to sink.
28.	Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargere,	to scatter.
29.	Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergere,	to wipe.
30.	Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figere,	to fix.
31.	Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectere,	to bend.
32.	Necto,	nexi (and-ui),	nexum,	nectere,	to bind.
33.	Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectere,	to comb.
34.	Plecto,	plexi (and-ui),	plexum,	plectere,	to plait.

(c.) Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.

35.	Pango,	pēpigi,	paatum,	pangere,	to fix.
36.	Parco,	{pēperci, {parsi,	{parcitur, {parsum,	pareere,	to spare.
37.	Pungo,	pūpigi,	punctum,	pungere,	to prick.
38.	Tango,	tētigi,	tactum,	tangere,	to touch.
39.	Disco,	didici,	—	discere,	to learn.
40.	Posco,	pōposci,	—	poscere,	to demand.

(d.) Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

41.	Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	āgere,	to do.
42.	Fāc-io,	fēci,	factum,	fācere,	to make, to do.
43.	Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangere,	to break.
44.	Fūg-io,	fūgi,	fugitum,	fūgere,	to flee, to fly.
45.	Īco,	īci,	ictum,	icere,	to strike (a treaty)
46.	Jāc-io,	jēci,	jactum,	jācere,	to throw.
47.	Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgere,	to read.
48.	Linqvo,	liqui,	(lictum,)	linquere,	to leave.
49.	Vincō,	vīci,	victum,	vīcere,	to conquer.

(e.) Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

50.	Texo,	texui,	textum,	texere,	to weave.
-----	-------	--------	---------	---------	-----------

(f.) Guttural Stem disguised.

51.	Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluere,	to flow.
52.	Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struere,	to pile up.
53.	Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivere,	to live.

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*NOTE—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *a*

1.	Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudĕre,	to shut.
2.	Divĭdo,	dĭvisi,	dĭvisum,	dĭvidĕre,	to divide.
3.	Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedĕre,	to strike, to injure
4.	Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdĕre,	to play.
5.	Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudĕre,	to clap the hands.
6.	Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādĕre,	to scrape.
7.	Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdĕre,	to gnaw.
8.	Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdĕre,	to thrust.
9.	{ Vādo,	—	—	vādĕre,	to go.
	{ Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādĕre,	to go against.
10.	Cĕdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cĕdĕre,	to yield.
11.	Mitto,	mĭsi,	missum,	mittĕre,	to send.
12.	Quāt-io,	—	quassum,	quātĕre,	to shake.

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13.	Cādo,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	cādĕre,	to fall.
14.	Caedo,	cĕcĭdi,	caesum,	caedĕre,	to strike.
15.	Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendĕre,	to hang, to weigh.
16.	Tendo,	tĕtendi,	{ tensum, tentum,	tendĕre,	to stretch.
17.	Tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum, tūsum,	tundĕre,	to beat.
18.	Do in composition,				to put.
	Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abdĕre,	to put away, to hide.
	Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	addĕre,	to put to, to add.
	Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	condĕre,	to put together, to build, hide.
	Dĕdo,	dĕdĭdi,	dĕdĭtum,	dĕdĕre,	to put down, to surrender.
	Ēdo,	ĕdĭdi,	ĕdĭtum,	ĕdĕre,	to put forth, to publish.
	Indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	indĕre,	to put on.
	Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perdĕre,	to ruin, to lose.
	Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōdĕre,	to betray.
	Reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	reddĕre,	to put back, to restore.
	Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subdĕre,	to put under, to substitute.
	Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trādĕre,	to put across, to deliver up.
	Crĕdo,	crĕdĭdi,	crĕdĭtum,	crĕdĕre,	to believe, trust.
	Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	vendĕre,	to sell.
19.	Sisto,	stĭti,	stātum,	sistĕre,	to cause to stand.

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

20.	{ (Cando)				
	{ Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendĕre,	to set on fire.
21.	Cūdo	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdĕre,	to hammer.
22.	Ēdo,	ĕdi,	ĕsum,	ĕdĕre,	to eat.

23.	{	(Fendo not used,			<i>to strike.)</i>
		Dēfendo, dēfendi, dēfensum, dēfendēre,			<i>to ward off, to defend.</i>
		Offendo, offendi, offensum, offendēre,			<i>to strike against, to assault.</i>
24.		Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, fōdēre,			<i>to dig.</i>
25.		Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, fundēre,			<i>to pour.</i>
26.		Mando, mandī, mansum, mandēre,			<i>to chew.</i>
		(rare,)			
27.		Pando, pandī, { pansum, pandēre, <i>to spread.</i>			
		{ passum,			
28.		Prēhendo, prēhendi, prēhensum, prēhendēre,			<i>to grasp.</i>
29.		Scando, scandī, scansum, scandēre,			<i>to climb.</i>
30.	{	Strido, strīdi, —, stridēre,			<i>to creak.</i>
	{	Strīdeo,			
31.		Verto, vertī, versum, vertēre,			<i>to turn.</i>
32.		Findo, fīdi, fissum, findēre,			<i>to cleave.</i>
33.		Scindo, scīdi, scissum, scindēre,			<i>to tear.</i>
34.	{	Frendo, —, { fressum, frendēre,			<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
		Frendeo, —, { frēsūm, —			

(d.) Other Forms.

35.	Mēto,	messui,	messum,	mētēre,	<i>to mow.</i>
36.	Pēto,	pētīvi or pētīi,	pētītum,	pētēre,	<i>to seek.</i>
37.	Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	—	sīdēre,	<i>to settle down.</i>
38.	Sterto,	stertui.	—	stertēre,	<i>to snore.</i>
39.	Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdēre,	<i>to trust.</i>

§ 160.—Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.

(a.) Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*itum* or *tum*.

1.	Alo,	ālui,	ālītum or altum,	ālēre,	<i>to nourish.</i>
2.	Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlēre,	<i>to till.</i>
3.	Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	consūlēre,	<i>to consult.</i>
4.	Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlītum,	mōlēre,	<i>to grind.</i>
5.	Occūlo,	occūlui,	occultum,	occūlēre,	<i>to conceal.</i>
6.	Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	<i>to wish.</i>
7.	Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmēre,	<i>to roar.</i>
8.	Gēmo,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmēre,	<i>to groan.</i>
9.	Trēmo,	trēmui,	—	trēmēre,	<i>to tremble.</i>
10.	Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmēre,	<i>to vomit.</i>
11.	Gigno,	gēnui,	gignēre,	gēnītum,	<i>to produce.</i>

(b.) Perfect with Reduplication.

12.	Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallēre,	<i>to deceive.</i>
13.	Pello,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	pellēre,	<i>to drive.</i>
14.	Cāno,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānēre,	<i>to sing.</i>

(c.) *Perfect si. Supine—tum.*

15. Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmēre,	<i>to adorn.</i>
16. Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmēre,	<i>to take away.</i>
17. Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmēre,	<i>to take out.</i>
18. Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmēre,	<i>to take up.</i>
19. Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnēre,	<i>to despise.</i>

(d.) *Other forms.*

20. Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percellēre,	<i>to strike down.</i>
21. Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallēre,	<i>to play on a stringed instrument.</i>
22. Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellēre,	<i>to pluck.</i>
23. Tollo,	sustūli,	sublātum,	-tollēre,	<i>to raise up.</i>
24. Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ēmēre,	<i>to buy or take.</i>
25. Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmēre,	<i>to press.</i>
26. Līno,	lēvi,	lītum,	līnēre,	<i>to smear.</i>
27. Sino,	sīvi,	sītum,	sīnēre,	<i>to permit.</i>

Obs. Cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prō, sūb, and ĕmo.

§ 161.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in R.*

1. Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernēre,	<i>to sift, to divide.</i>
2. Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernēre,	<i>to despise.</i>
3. Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternēre,	<i>to strew.</i>
4. Gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	gērēre,	<i>to carry.</i>
5. Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	urēre,	<i>to burn.</i>
6. Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	currēre,	<i>to run.</i>
7. Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	ferre,	<i>to bear, carry.</i>
8. Pār-io,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārēre,	<i>to produce.</i>
9. Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesitum,	quaerēre,	<i>to seek.</i>
10. Sēro,	sēruī,	sertum,	sērēre,	<i>to put in rows, to plait.</i>
11. Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sērēre,	<i>to sow.</i>
12. Tēro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tērēre,	<i>to rub.</i>
13. Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrēre,	<i>to sweep.</i>

§ 162.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

1. Depso,	depsi,	depsitum,	depsēre,	<i>to knead.</i>
2. Pinso,	{ pinsui,	{ pinsitum,	pinsēre,	<i>to pound.</i>
	{ pinsi,	{ pinsum,		
3. Pīso,	—	pistum,	pīsēre,	<i>to pound.</i>
4. Vīso,	vīsi,	—	vīsēre,	<i>to visit.</i>
5. Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsitum,	pōnēre,	<i>to place.</i>
6. Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessitum,	arcessēre,	<i>to send for.</i>
7. Cāpesso,	cāpessīvi,	cāpessitum,	cāpessēre,	<i>to take in hand.</i>
8. Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessitum,	fācessēre,	<i>to make, to cause.</i>
9. Lācesso,	lācessīvi,	lācessitum,	lācessēre,	<i>to provoke.</i>

Obs. In pōno the root is pōs, the n being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses.

§ 163.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.**Perfect—i. Supine—tum.*

1. Acuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācuēre,	to sharpen.
2. Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguēre,	to prove.
3. Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuēre,	to soak.
4. Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induēre,	to put on.
5. Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuēre,	to put off.
6. Mīnuo,	mīnui,	mīnūtum,	mīnuēre,	to lessen.
7. Rāo,	ruī,	rūtum,	ruēre,	to rush.
8. Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuēre,	to spit.
9. Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuēre,	to set up.
10. Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suēre,	to sew.
11. Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuēre,	to distribute.
12. Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lōtum,	lāvēre,	to wash.
13. Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
14. Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
15. Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruēre,	to agree.
16. Luo,	lui,	—	luēre,	to alone.
17. { Nuo,				to nod.)
{ Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuēre,	to refuse.
{ Annuo,	annui,	—	annuēre,	to assent.
18. Mētuo,	mētui,	—	mētuēre,	to fear.
19. Pluit,	pluit or plūvit,	—	pluēre,	to rain.
20. Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuēre,	to sneeze.

Obs. In *fluo, struo, vivo*, the Stem ends in *c* or *g*. See § 158, Nos. 51, 52, 53.

§ 164.—*Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in sco.*

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco, incālui, incālescere, to grow warm*, from *cāleo, cālui, cālere, to be warm*. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

1. Abōlesco,	ābōlēvi,	ābōlītum,	ābōlescere,	to grow out of use.
2. Adōlesco,	ādōlēvi,	ādultum,	ādōlescere,	to grow up.
3. Exōlesco,	exōlēvi,	exōlītum,	exōlescere,	to grow old.
4. Cōalesco,	cōālui,	cōālītum,	cōalescere,	to grow together.
(ālo)				
5. Concūpisco,	concūpīvi,	concūpītum,	concūpiscere,	to desire.
(cūpio)				
6. Convālesco,	convālui,	convālītum,	convālescere,	to grow strong.
(vāleo)				
7. Exardesco,	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescere,	to take fire.
(ardeo)				

8. *Invētērasco*, *invētērāvī*, *invētērātum*, *invētērascere*, *to grow old.*
(*invētēro*)
9. *Obdormisco*, *obdormīvī*, *obdormītum*, *obdormiscere*, *to fall asleep.*
(*dormio*)
10. *Rēvīvisco*, *rēvixī*, *rēvictum*, *rēvīviscere*, *to come to life*
(*vīvo*) *again.*
11. *Scisco*, *scīvī*, *scītum*, *sciscere*, *to seek to know,*
(*scio*) *to enact.*

Obs. *Ābōlesco*, *ādōlesco*, *exōlesco* are formed from an obsolete verb *ōsc*, *to grow.*

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

1. *Consēnesco*, *consēnui*, — *consēnescere*, *to grow old.*
(*sēnex*)
2. *Ingrāvesco*, — — *ingrāvescere*, *to grow heavy.*
(*grāvis*)
3. *Jūvenesco*, — — *jūvenescere*, *to grow young.*
(*jūvēnis*)
4. *Mātūresco*, *mātūrui*, — *mātūrescere*, *to grow ripe.*
(*mātūrus*)
5. *Obmūtesco*, *obmūtui*, — *obmūtescere*, *to grow dumb.*
(*mūtus*)

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as unde-rived Verbs:

1. *Cresco*, *crēvī*, *crētum*, *crecere*, *to grow.*
2. *Glisco*, — — *gliscere*, *to swell.*
3. *Hisco*, (*hio*), — — *hiscere*, *to gape.*
4. *Nosco*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*, *noscere*, *to learn, to know.*
5. *Pasco*, *pāvī*, *pastum*, *pascere*, *to feed.*
6. *Quiesco*, *quievī*, *quietum*, *quiescere*, *to become quiet.*
7. *Suesco*, *suēvī*, *suētum*, *suescere*, *to grow accus-*
tomed.

Obs. In *Nosco* the Perfect signifies *I know*; the Past-Perfect, *I knew*. The Stem is *gno*: hence in composition we have

- Agnosco*, *agnōvī*, *agnitum*, *agnoscere*, *to recognise.*
Cognosco, *cognōvī*, *cognitum*, *cognoscere*, *to learn, to know.*

IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*: as, *audio*, *audivi*, *auditum*, *audire*, *to hear*. The following are exceptions:

1. *Farcio*, *farsī*, { *fartum*, *farcire*, *to cram.*
{ (*fartum*,)
2. *Fulcio*, *fulsī*, *fultum*, *fulcire*, *to prop.*

3.	Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	<i>to draw (water).</i>
4.	Sancio,	sanxi,	{sancitum, sanctum,	sancīre,	<i>to ratify.</i>
5.	Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	<i>to patch.</i>
6.	Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	<i>to feel, to think.</i>
7.	Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepire,	<i>to fence in.</i>
8.	Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	<i>to bind.</i>
9.	Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	<i>to go.</i>
10.	Sālio,	sālui or sālii,	saltum,	sālīre,	<i>to leap.</i>
11.	Sēpēlio,	sēpēliui,	sēpultum,	sēpēlire,	<i>to bury.</i>
12.	Vēnio,	vēni.	ventum,	vēnīre,	<i>to come.</i>
13.	Amīcio,	{āmīcui, amixi,	āmictum,	āmīcīre,	<i>to clothe.</i>
14.	Apērio,	āpēriui,	āpertum,	āpērire,	<i>to open.</i>
15.	Opērio,	ōpēriui,	ōpertum,	ōpērire,	<i>to cover.</i>

V. DEPONENTS.

§ 169. *In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.*

§ 170. *Second Conjugation.*

1.	{Fāteor, Confīteor	fāsus sum, cōnfessus sum,	fātēri, cōnfītēri,	<i>to confess.</i> <i>to confess.</i>
2.	Līceor,	līcītus sum,	līcēri,	<i>to bid (at a sale).</i>
3.	Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	<i>to heal.</i>
4.	Mēreor	mērītus sum,	mērēri,	<i>to earn, to deserve.</i>
5.	Misēreor,	mīsērītus sum or mīsertus sum,	mīsērēri,	<i>to take pity on.</i>
6.	Pollīceor,	pollīcītus sum,	pollīcēri,	<i>to promise.</i>
7.	Reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	<i>to think.</i>
8.	Tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuēri,	<i>to look upon, pro-</i>
9.	Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	<i>to fear.</i> [text]

§ 171. *Third Conjugation.*

1.	Fruor,	{(fructus sum), frūctus sum,	frui,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
2.	Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	<i>to perform.</i>
3.	Grādior.	gressus sum,	grādi,	<i>to step.</i>
4.	Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	<i>to slip.</i>
5.	Līquor,	(līquefactus sum),	līqui,	<i>to melt.</i>
6.	Lōquor,	lōcūtus sum,	lōqui,	<i>to speak.</i>
7.	Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	mōri,	<i>to die.</i>
8.	Nitor,	{nixus sum, nisus,	nīti,	<i>to strain.</i>
9.	Pātor,	passus sum,	pāti,	<i>to suffer.</i>
10.	Quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	<i>to complain.</i>
11.	Ringor,	—	ringi,	<i>to show the teeth,</i> <i>to snarl.</i>
12.	Sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēqui,	<i>to follow.</i>

13.	Utor,	ūsus sum,	ūtī,	<i>to use.</i>
14.	{ (Verto) Rēvertor,	(rēversus sum),	rēvertī,	<i>to return.</i>
15.	{ (Plecto) Amplector, Complector,	amplexus sum, complexus sum,	amplectī, complectī,	<i>to embrace.</i>
16.	{ Apiscor, Adīpiscor,	aptus sum, ādeptus sum,	āpisci, ādīpisci,	<i>to obtain.</i> <i>to obtain.</i>
17.	Commūniscor,	commentus sum,	commūnisci,	<i>to devise.</i>
18.	Rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	<i>to remember.</i>
19.	Dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	<i>to grow weary.</i>
20.	Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	<i>to wake up.</i>
21.	Irascor,	—	irasci,	<i>to be angry.</i>
22.	Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	<i>to obtain by chance.</i>
23.	Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	<i>to be born.</i>
24.	Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblivisci,	<i>to forget.</i>
25.	Pāciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	<i>to make an agree- ment.</i>
26.	Prōficiscor,	prōfectus sum,	prōficisci,	<i>to set out.</i>
27.	Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	<i>to avenge.</i>
28.	Vescor,	—	vesci,	<i>to eat.</i>

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1.	Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	<i>to agree to.</i>
2.	Blandior,	blanditus sum,	blandīri,	<i>to flatter.</i>
3.	Expērior,	expertus sum,	expērīri,	<i>to try.</i>
4.	Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum, oppērītus,	oppērīri,	<i>to wait for.</i>
5.	Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	<i>to give bountifully.</i>
6.	Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	<i>to lie.</i>
7.	Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	<i>to measure.</i>
8.	Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	<i>to labour.</i>
9.	Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	<i>to begin.</i>
10.	Orior,	ortus sum,	ōrīri,	<i>to rise.</i>
11.	Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	<i>to divide.</i>
12.	Pōtior,	pōtītus sum,	pōtīri,	<i>to obtain posses- sion of.</i>
13.	Pūnior,	pūnītus sum,	pūnīri,	<i>to punish.</i>
14.	Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	<i>to take by lot.</i>

In *Orior* the *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation : ōrēris, ōrītur, ōrīmur. In the *Im perf. Subj.* both ōrērer and ōrīrer are found. The compounds *coōrior* and *exōrior*, *to arise*, are conjugated like *ōrior* : but *ādōrior*, *to attack*, has *ādōrīris*, *ādōrītur*.

COMPOUND VERB,

1. The vowel of the simple verb is frequently changed in composition. The rules for these changes are given in § 206.

2. In compound verbs the Reduplication of the Perfect is usually omitted. See § 107, 4. *Obs.*

FORMATION OF WORDS.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—FORMATION OF WORDS.
DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. A *Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) A Pure Root, without any addition whatever: as, *ād*, *āb*, *sūb*; *nē* or *nōn*; with other indeclinable words.

Obs. Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, *fēr*, *bear thou*; *dīc*, *say thou*; *fūr*, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) A word derived from a Single Root by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, *dic-o*, *dic-tio*, *dīc-ax*, from *dic*.

§ 175. A *Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, *hōmicīda*, *a manslayer*, from *hōm-o*, *a man*, and *caed-o*, *to kill*.

§ 176. A *Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. A *Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the *s* of the Nominative Case Singular in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations *-ōsus*, *-īnus*, *-īlis*, etc.

Obs. For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the *derivation* of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. A *Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, *amb-io*, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, *te tīg-i* (Root, *-tag*), *mo-mord-i* (Root, *mord*), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, *āgīlis* (Stem, *āgīli*) *active*; *vōlens* (Stem, *vōlent*), *willing*; from the Roots *ag* (*act*), *vol* (*will*).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

<i>āg-o</i> ,	Stem and Root	AG,	<i>set in motion, act.</i>
<i>dūc-o</i> , <i>dux</i> (<i>duc-s</i>),	" "	DUC,	<i>lead.</i>
<i>rēg-o</i> , <i>rex</i> (<i>reg-s</i>),	" "	REG,	<i>rule.</i>
<i>lēg-o</i> , <i>lex</i> (<i>leg-s</i>),	" "	LEG,	<i>read.</i>
<i>pēs</i> , <i>pēd-is</i> ,	" "	PED,	<i>the foot.</i>
<i>sōl</i> , <i>sōlis</i> ,	" "	SOL,	<i>the sun.</i>
<i>sāl</i> , <i>sālis</i> ,	" "	SAL,	<i>salt.</i>

§ 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive : as,

ām-or,	love,	from	āmo
clām-or,	a shout,	„	clāmo
cāl-or,	warmth,	„	cāleo
tīm-or,	fear,	„	tīmeo
fāv-or,	favour,	„	fāveo
fūr-or,	madness,	„	fūro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer : as,

āmā-tor,	a lover,	from	āmo
audī-tor,	a hearer,	„	audio
mōnī-tor,	an adviser,	„	mōneō
vic-tor,	a conqueror,	„	vinco (root VIC)
vēnā-tor,	a hunter,	„	vēnor
lec-tor.	a reader,	„	lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix* : as,

victor,	victrix,	conqueress.
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	huntress.

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine : as, cursor, a runner, from curro (cursum).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action : as,

obsid-io,	a siege,	from	obside
obliv-io,	forgetfulness,	„	obliviscor
contāg-io,	a touching, contagion,	„	contingo, root (CON)TAG
ac-tio,	doing,	„	āgo
lec-tio,	reading,	„	lēgo
scrip-tio,	writing,	„	scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action : as,

ac-tus,	doing,	from	āgo
audī-tus,	hearing,	„	audio
auc-tus,	an increase,	„	augeo
can-tus,	singing,	„	cāno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine : as, versio and versus from verto ; visio and visus from vīdeo.

5. *tūra* also usually denotes the action : as,

mercā-tūra,	trading,	from	mercor
āper-tūra,	an opening,	„	āperio
cinc-tūra,	a girding,	„	cingo
junc-tūra,	a joining,	„	jungo

6. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an act or state : as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gaudeo
ōd-ium,	hatred,	„ ōdi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	„ incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	„ aedifico.

7. **mĕn** (*Gen. mĕnis, n.*) usually denotes an instrument : as,

flū-men,	a river,	from fluo
lū-men,	a light,	„ lūceo
sōlā-men,	a consolation,	„ sōlor
teg-men,	a covering,	„ tĕgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force : as, *agmen, that which is led, an army marching ; gestāmen, that which is carried, etc.*

8. **mentum** (*n.*) frequently denotes an instrument : as,

dōcĕ-mentum,	a proof,	from dōceo
impĕdi-mentum,	a hindrance,	„ impĕdio
mō-mentum,	a moving force,	„ mōveo
ornā-mentum,	an ornament,	„ orno.

9. **bŭlum, cŭlum, and trum** (*n.*) (*brum and crum after D*), also denote an instrument : as,

vĕnā-bŭlum,	a hunting-spear,	from vĕnor
pā-bŭlum,	fodder,	„ pascor
gŭbernā-cŭlum,	a rudder	„ gŭberna
fer-cŭlum,	a tray,	„ fĕro
lāvācrum,	a bath,	„ lāvo
fulcrum,	a prop,	„ fulcio
ventilābrum,	a winnowing-fork,	„ ventilo
ārātrum,	a plough,	„ āro.

Obs. 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is ŭlum only : as,

jāc-ŭlum,	a dart,	from jācio
cing-ŭlum,	a girdle,	„ cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix *bŭlum* signifies a place : as, *stā-bŭlum, a standing-place or stall, from sto (sta-re).*

10. **ies** (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action ; as,

fācies,	figure,	from fācio
effigies,	image	„ effingo (root ex-FIG.)
congĕries,	a heap,	„ congĕro

11. **mnus** (*m.*), passive or middle participial form (*Gr. -όμενος*) : as,

ālumnus,	nurseling, foster-son,	from ālo
Vertumnus,	god of the seasons [he that turns himself],	„ verito.

§ 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. **ārius** (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation ; as,

argent-ārius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
stātū-ārius,	a statuary,	„ stātua
acr-ārius,	a coppersmith,	„ aes
sic-ārius,	an assassin,	„ sica.

2. **ārium** (*n.*) denotes the place where anything is kept : as,

arm-ārium	a cupboard,	from arma, orum
āvi-ārium,	an aviary,	„ āvis
cōlumb-ārium,	a dove-cote,	„ cōlumba
aer-ārium,	a treasury,	„ aes.

Obs. ārius and ārium are properly the Suffixes of Adjectives. See § 187, 9.

3. **īna** (*f.*) denotes an employment, and also the place where the employment is carried on : as,

mēdic-īna,	the healing art,	from mēdicus
offic-īna,	a workshop,	„ officium
sutr-īna,	a shoemaker's shop,	„ sūtor.

Obs. Officina is a contraction for ōpificina (ōpus, fācio).

Sometimes **īna** denotes simply the female : as,

rēg-īna,	a queen,	from rex
gall-īna,	a hen,	„ gallus.

Obs. īna is properly a feminine Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 7.

4. **ātus** (*Gen. us, m.*) and **ūra** (*f.*), added to Substantives designating public officers, denote the office : as,

consul-ātus,	consulship,	from consul
tribūn-ātus,	tribuneship,	„ tribūnus
cens-ūra,	ensorship,	„ censor
praet-ūra,	praetorship,	„ praetor.

5. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c. : as,

sācerdōt-ium,	priesthood,	from sācerdōs (-dōtās)
mīnistēr-ium,	service,	„ mīnistēr
exsil-ium,	exile,	„ exsul
hospit-ium,	hospitality,	„ hospes (-pītis).

6. **āl** (*n.*) and **ār** (*n.*) denote a material object : as,

ānīm-āl,	an animal,	from ānīma,	life.
calcār,	a spur,	„ calx (calc-s),	the heel.

7. **ētum** (*n.*) affixed to names of trees or plants denotes the place where they grow in a quantity, and also the trees themselves collectively : as,

myrt-ētum,	a myrtle-grove,	from myrtus
querc-ētum,	an oak-plantation,	„ quercus
ōlīv-ētum,	an olive-yard,	„ ōlīva
vīn-ētum,	a vineyard,	„ vīnea.

8. **īlc** (*Gen. is, n.*) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them : as,

bōv-īlc,	an ox-stall,	from bos, bōvis
ēqu-īlc,	a stable for horses,	„ ēquus
ōv-īlc,	a sheep-fold,	„ ōvis.

Obs. īlc is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 4.

§ 183. DIMINUTIVES.

Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endearment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. *ūlus, ūla, ūlum*, added to substantives of the First and Second Declensions: as,

nīd-ūlus,	a little nest,	from nīdus
hort-ūlus,	a little garden,	„ hortus
rīv-ūlus,	a little river,	„ rīvus
mens-ūla,	a little table,	„ mensa
silv-ūla,	a little wood,	„ silva
virg-ūla,	a little twig,	„ virga
cāpīt-ūlum,	a small head,	„ cāpūt
sax-ūlum,	a small rock,	„ saxum
scūt-ūlum,	a small shield,	„ scūtum.

- 2 *ōlus, cūla, cūlum*, added to substantives of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions: as,

frāter-cūlus,	a little brother,	from frāter
flos-cūlus,	a little flower,	„ flos
versī-cūlus,	a little verse,	„ versus
māter-cūla,	a poor mother,	„ māter
nāvī-cūla,	a small ship,	„ nāvis
āvī-cūla,	a small bird,	„ āvis
rē-cūla,	a small matter,	„ rēs
corpus-cūlum,	a small body,	„ corpus
mūnus-cūlum,	a small present,	„ mūnus
rētī-cūlum,	a little net,	„ rēte.

Obs. 1. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ūlus, ūla, ūlum*, they become *ōlus, ōla, ōlum*: as,

fīli-ōlus,	a little son,	from fīlius
malle-ōlus,	a small hammer,	„ malleus
fīli-ōla,	a little daughter,	„ fīlia
līne-ōla,	a little line,	„ līnea
nēgōti-ōlum,	a little business,	„ nēgōtium
ingēni-ōlum,	a little talent,	„ ingēnium.

Obs. 2. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l, n,* or *r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illus, illa, illum*: as,

ōcellus,	a little eye,	from ōculus	(Stem, ōcūlo)
lībellus,	a little book,	„ līber	(„ libro)
lāpillus,	a little stone,	„ lāpis	(„ lāpid)
cātella,	a little chain,	„ cātēna	(„ cātēna)
anguilla,	a little snake,	„ anguis	(„ angui)
sigillum,	a little figure,	„ signum	(„ signo).

Obs. 3. If the Stem of the primitive ends in *c* or *g*, *t* or *d*, the diminutives are generally formed by adding *ūlus, ūla, ūlum*: as,

rēg-ūlus,	a petty king,	from rex (reg-s)
rādic-ūla,	a little root,	„ rādic (rādic-s).

§ 184. PATRONYMICS.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in :

1. *ides* : as, Priām-ides, a son of Priamus.
2. *ides* : as, Atr-ides, a son of Atreus.
3. *ādes* and *iādes* : as, Aene-ādes, a son of Aeneas ; Atlant-iades, a son of Atlas.

Obs. Patronymics in *ides* (εἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in *eus* (εὐς).

Feminine Patronymics end in :

1. *is*, *Gen. idis* : as, Tantal-is, a daughter of Tantalus.
2. *ēis*, *Gen. ēidis* : as, Nel-ēis, a daughter of Neleus.
3. *ias*, *Gen. iadis* : as, Laert-ias, a daughter of Laertes.
4. *īne* : as, Neptūn-īne, a daughter of Neptunus.
5. *ōne* : as, Acrisi-ōne, a daughter of Acrisius.

§ 185. III. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes :—

1. *ia* (*f.*) : as,

grāt-ia,	favour,	from grātus
insān-ia,	madness,	„ insānus
mīser-ia,	wretchedness,	„ miser
prūdent-ia,	prudence,	„ prūdēns.
2. *tia* (*f.*) : as,

laetī-tia,	joy,	from laetus
justī-tia,	justice,	„ justus
mollī-tia,	softness,	„ mollis
pigrī-tia,	sloth,	„ piger.
3. *tās* (*Gen. tātis, f.*) : as,

bōnī-tas,	goodness,	from bōnus
vērī-tas,	truth,	„ vērus
crūdēlī-tas,	cruelty,	„ crūdēlis
atrōcī-tas,	fierceness,	„ atrox.
4. *tūdo* (*Gen. tūdīnis, f.*) : as,

altī-tūdo,	height,	from altus
aegrī-tūdo,	sickness,	„ aeger
fortī-tūdo,	bravery,	„ fortis
sīmīlī-tūdo,	likeness,	„ sīmīlis.
5. *mōnia* (*f.*) : as,

sanctī-mōnia,	sanctity,	from sanctus
castī-mōnia,	virity,	„ castus
āerī-mōnia	slurpness,	„ ācer.

CHAPTER XXIX.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *bundus*, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle.
See § 110, 3.

2. *īdus* denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as,

<i>frīg-īdus</i> ,	<i>cold</i> ,	from <i>frīgeo</i>
<i>mād-īdus</i> ,	<i>wet</i> ,	„ <i>mādeo</i>
<i>tīm-īdus</i> ,	<i>fearful</i> ,	„ <i>tīmeo</i>
<i>vāl-īdus</i> ,	<i>strong</i> ,	„ <i>vāleo</i> .

3. *īlis* and *bīlis* denote the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as,

<i>dōc-īlis</i> ,	<i>teachable</i> ,	from <i>dōceo</i>
<i>fāc-īlis</i> ,	<i>doable (easy)</i> ,	„ <i>fācio</i>
<i>āmā-bīlis</i> ,	<i>loveable</i> ,	„ <i>āmo</i>
<i>mō-bīlis</i> ,	<i>moveable</i> ,	„ <i>mōveo</i> .

(= *mōvī-bīlis*)

4. *ax* denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as,

<i>aud-ax</i> ,	<i>daring</i> ,	from <i>audeo</i>
<i>ēd-ax</i> ,	<i>gluttonous</i> ,	„ <i>ēdo</i>
<i>lōqu-ax</i> ,	<i>talkative</i> ,	„ <i>lōquor</i>
<i>vōr-ax</i> ,	<i>voracious</i> ,	„ <i>vōro</i> .

Obs. The following Suffixes are less common :

1. <i>cundus</i> : as,	<i>Irā-cundus</i> ,	<i>angry</i> ,	from <i>Irā-scor</i>
	<i>fā-undus</i> ,	<i>eloquent</i>	„ <i>fari</i>
2. <i>ūlus</i> : as,	<i>quēr-ūlus</i> ,	<i>querulous</i> ,	„ <i>quēror</i> .

§ 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *ēus* denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

<i>aur-eus</i> ,	<i>golden</i> ,	from <i>aurum</i>
<i>virgīn-eus</i> ,	<i>maidenlike</i> ,	„ <i>virgo</i> , <i>-īnis</i> .

Also *-nus*, *made of* ; appended to stems of nouns denoting *trees* ; as *ācer-nus*, *made of maple*, from *ācer*, *a maple tree* ; *quēr-nus* [*querc-nus*], *oaken* ; from *quercus*.

2. *īcius* or *ītius* denotes the material, or relation to something : as,

<i>lātēr-īcius</i> ,	<i>made of bricks</i> ,	from <i>lāter</i>
<i>tribūn-īcius</i> ,	<i>relating to a tribune</i> ,	„ <i>tribūnus</i>
<i>aedīl-īcius</i> ,	<i>relating to an aedile</i> ,	„ <i>aedīlis</i> .

Obs. 1. *āceus* has the same meaning, but is rare : as, *argill-āceus*, *made of clay*, from *argilla*.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *īcius* derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, *commentīcius*, *feigns*.

3. *īcus* denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,
- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| bell-īcus, | <i>relating to war,</i> | from bellum |
| cīv-īcus, | <i>relating to a citizen,</i> | „ cīvis |
| class-īcus, | <i>relating to a fleet,</i> | „ classis. |

Obs. The following Adjectives in *īcus* have *ī* :

āmīcus,	<i>friendly,</i>	from	āmo, āmor
antīcus,	<i>front,</i>	„	antē
postīcus,	<i>hinder,</i>	„	post.
apricus,	<i>sunny,</i>	„	āpērio (!)

4. *īlis* has the same meaning : as,

host-īlis,	<i>hostile,</i>	from hostis
serv-īlis,	<i>slavish,</i>	„ servus
puēr-īlis,	<i>childish,</i>	„ puer.

5. *ālis* has the same meaning : as,

fāt-ālis,	<i>fatal,</i>	from fātum
rēg-ālis,	<i>kingly,</i>	„ rex
vit-ālis,	<i>vital,</i>	„ vīta.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is *āris* (comp. § 181, 9) : as,

pōpūl-āris,	<i>pertaining to the people,</i>	from pōpūlus
sālūt-āris,	<i>salutary,</i>	„ sālūs, sālūtis.

6. *īus* has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

patr-īus,	<i>pertaining to a father,</i>	from pāter
sōrōr-īus,	<i>pertaining to a sister,</i>	„ sōror
ōrātōr-īus,	<i>pertaining to an orator,</i>	„ ōrātor.

7. *īnus* has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

cān-īnus,	<i>pertaining to a dog,</i>	from cānus
ēqu-īnus,	<i>pertaining to a horse,</i>	„ ēquus
dīv-īnus,	<i>pertaining to the gods,</i>	„ dīvus.

8. *ārus* has the same meaning : as,

urb-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a city,</i>	from urbs
font-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a fountain,</i>	„ fons, fontis
mont-ānus,	<i>pertaining to a mountain,</i>	„ mons, montis.

9. *ārius* has the same meaning : as,

agr-ārius,	<i>pertaining to land,</i>	from āgēr
grēg-ārius,	<i>belonging to a flock,</i>	„ grex, grēgis
lēgiōn-ārius,	<i>belonging to a legion,</i>	„ lēgiō.

Obs. *ārius* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives. See § 182.

10. *ōsus* denotes fulness : as,

lāpīd-ōsus,	<i>full of stones,</i>	from lāpis
pēricūl-ōsus,	<i>full of dangers,</i>	„ pēricūlum
ānīm-ōsus.	<i>full of courage,</i>	„ ānīmūs.

11. *lontus*, usually preceded by the vowel *ü* or *ö*, also denotes fullness : as,

fraud-ülentus,	<i>full of deceit,</i>	from	fraus (fraud-s)
vi-ölentus,	<i>full of violence,</i>	„	vis

12. *ätus*, sometimes *itus* and *ütus*, denote having something or provided with something : as,

älä-tus,	<i>furnished with wings, winged,</i>	from	äla
tög-ätus,	„	<i>a toga,</i>	„ töga
aur-itus,	„	<i>ears,</i>	„ auris
corn-ütus,	„	<i>horns, horned,</i>	„ cornu.

§ 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix *ānus* or *iānus* : as,

Māri-ānus,	from	Mārius
Sull-ānus,	„	Sulla
Gracch-ānus,	„	Gracchus
Cicērōn-iānus,	„	Cicēro.

The Suffix *inus* is rare : as,

Verr-inus (punningly), from Verres (or verres, *a hog*)

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes *ēus* or *ius* and *icus* : as,

Epicūr-ēus,	from	Epicūrus
Aristōtēl-ius	„	Aristōtēles
Plātōn-icus,	„	Plāto.

The poets form Adjectives in *ēus* from Roman names : as,

Römül-eus,	from	Römūlus.
------------	------	----------

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *ensis* : as,

Cann-ensis,	from	Cannæ
Cōm-ensis,	„	Cōmum
Sulmōn-ensis,	„	Sulmo (Sulmōn-is).

2. *inus*, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium* : as,

Amēr-inus,	from	Amēria
Caud-inus,	„	Caudium.

3. *ānus*, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i* : as,

Rōm-ānus,	from	Rōma
Thēb-ānus,	„	Thēbae
Tuscūl-ānus,	„	Tuscūlum
Fund-ānus,	„	Fundi.

t. *ās*, *Gen. ātis*, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae*: as,

Arpīnās,	from Arpīnum
Cāpēnās,	„ Cāpēna
Fidēnās,	„ Fidēnae.

Obs. 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

Obs. 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: as,

Cōrīnth-ius,	from Cōrīnthus.
--------------	-----------------

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in *icus* are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: as,

Gall-icus, <i>Galic</i> ,	from Gallus, <i>a Gaul</i> .
Arāb-icus, <i>Arabic</i> ,	„ Arabs, <i>an Arab</i> .

Obs. The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: as, *Hispania, Spain*, from *Hispanus*. Adjectives in *ensis* derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: as, *exercitus Hispaniensis, an army stationed in Spain*, not an army consisting of Spaniards; but, on the other hand, *spartum Hispanicum* is a plant growing in Spain; similarly *Galicanus* from *Galicus*.

CHAPTER XXX.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

mātūro,	<i>I make ripe,</i>	from mātūrus
libēro,	<i>I make free,</i>	„ liber
rōbōro,	<i>I make strong, I strengthen,</i>	„ rōbūr (rōbōr-is).

Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: as,

finio,	<i>I finish,</i>	from finis
mollio,	<i>I soften,</i>	„ mollis.

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

ancillor,	<i>I am a maid-servant,</i>	from ancilla
āquor,	<i>I fetch water,</i>	„ āqua
laetor,	<i>I am joyful,</i>	„ laetus
philōsōphor,	<i>I am a philosopher,</i>	„ philōsōphus.

§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo,	<i>I am bald,</i>	from calvus
albeo,	<i>I am white,</i>	„ albus.

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, *duresco* (*dūreo*), *I grow hard*, from *dūrus*.

§ 194. II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clam-ito,	<i>I cry out often,</i>	from clāmo
rōg-ito,	<i>I ask often,</i>	„ rōgo
mīn-itor,	<i>I threaten often,</i>	„ mīnor
lect-ito,	<i>I read often,</i>	„ lēgo, lectum
script-ito,	<i>I write often,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum
vent-ito,	<i>I come often,</i>	„ vēnio, ventum.

Obs. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso,	<i>I run hither and thither,</i>	from curro, cursum
salto,	<i>I dance,</i>	„ sāllo, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco* (*asco, esco, isco*), 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lāb-asco,	<i>I begin to totter,</i>	from lābo
cāl-esco,	<i>I grow warm,</i>	„ cāleo
trēm-isco,	<i>I begin to tremble,</i>	„ trēmo
obdormi-sco,	<i>I fall asleep,</i>	„ dormio
sēn-esco,	<i>I grow old,</i>	„ sēnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, and dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

ēs-ūrio,	<i>I long to eat,</i>	from ēdo, ēsum
script-ūrio,	<i>I long to write,</i>	„ scribo, scriptum.

Obs. By analogy is formed *Sullatūrio*, *I long to play the part of Sulla*.

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in *illo* (*illāre*, 1): as,

cant-illo,	<i>I warble,</i>	from canto
sorb-illo,	<i>I sip,</i>	„ sorbeo
conscrib-illo,	<i>I scribble,</i>	„ conscribo

§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

jacio,	jacere,	to throw,	iaceo, jacere,	to lie.
pendo,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh,	pendeo, pendere,	to be hanging.
pario,	parere,	to bring forth,	pareo, parere,	to be visible.
(cando, candere),	}	to set on fire,	candeo, candere,	to be burning.
incendo, incendere,				

CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in ē are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

mōdestē,	modestly,	from mōdestus
pulchrē,	beautifully,	„ pulcher
doctē,	learnedly,	„ doctus.

Obs. 1. From bōnus comes bēnē, from mālus comes mālē, both with the final *e* short. From vālīdus, *strong*, comes valdē.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tēr as well as in ē : as,

dūrē,	dūrītēr,	severely,	from dūrus
fīrmē,	fīrmītēr,	firmly,	„ firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvītēr,	actively,	„ gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmānītēr,	courteously,	„ hūmānus
largē,	largītēr,	bounteously,	„ largus
lūcūlentē,	lūcūlentēr,	splendidly,	„ lūcūlentus.

From viōlentus, *vehement*, there is only viōlentēr ; the form viōlens is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in ō are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

falsō,	falsely,	from falsus
tutō,	safely,	„ tutus
crēbrō,	frequently,	„ crēber.

Obs. The form in o is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in ē and ō, but with a difference of meaning : as, certō, *certainly*, and certē, *at any rate* ; vērō, *in truth, indeed*, and vērē, *truly*.

§ 198. Adverbs in tēr are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension : as,

grāvī-tēr,	heavily,	from grāvis
fēlici-tēr,	fortunately,	„ fēlix.

Obs. If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted: as,

sāpienter, *wisely*, from sāpiens (sāpient-s).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs: as,

facile, *easily*; recens, *lately*; multum, *much*.

§ 200. Adverbs in *itūs* are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from* something: as,

coel-itūs, *from heaven*, from coelum
rādic-itūs, *from the roots*, „ rādic (rādic-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in *tim* are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner: as,

cātervā-tim, *in troops*, from cāterva
privā-tim, *as a private person*, „ privātus
stā-tim, *immediately*, „ sto (stare)
punc-tim, *with the point*, „ pungo.

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73.

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

CHAPTER XXXII.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

Obs. Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are wꝛd together, but these are not genuine compounds: as,

respublica, *Gen. rēpublicae*, *the commonwealth*.
jusjūrandum, *Gen. jūrisjūrandī*, *an oath*.
sēnātus-consultum, *a resolution of the senate*.
āquae-ductus, *a water-channel*.

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when *facio* is in the second: as,

ārēfacio, *to make dry*.
cālēfacio, *to make warm*.
liquēfacio, *to cause to melt*.
mādēfacio, *to make wet*.
pātēfacio, *to throw open*.

Obs. Such apparent compounds as *nidifco*, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective: as, *nidificus*, *nest-building*.

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

cāpio,	to take,	accīpio
rāpio,	to seize,	arrīpio
pātor,	to suffer,	perpētior
grādior,	to walk,	congrēdior.

Obs. Pērāgo, to complete, perplāceo, to please greatly, and faciō compounded with adverbs, as sātisfaciō, to satisfy, are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	to pluck,	concerpo
damno,	to condemn,	condemno
scando,	to climb,	conscendo
spargo,	to scatter	conspergo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

salto,	to dance,	insulto
calco,	to tread,	conculco
quātio,	to shake,	concutio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ŕgēo,	to want,	indīgeo
sēdeo,	to sit,	insīdeo
tēneo,	to hold,	abstīneo.

Obs. Perlēgo, to read through, praelēgo, to read to others, rēlego, to read again, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	to cut,	occīdo
quaero,	to seek,	inquīro
laedo,	to strike,	collido.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *e*: as,

plaudo,	to clap the hands,	explōdo
claudio,	to shut,	conclūdo
audio,	to hear,	ōbēdio.

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 138.

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel *i*, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pēdisēquus,	a follower on foot,	from pes (pēd) and sēquor
mūnificus,	bountiful,	„ mūnus and faciō
causidicus,	an advocate,	„ causa and dīco
agricōla,	a husbandman,	„ āgēr and cōlo
āquilifer,	a standard-bearer,	„ āquīla and fēro.

§ 208. The quantity of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fēro, affēro; hābeo, prōhibeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

CHAPTER XXXIII.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (*praedicāre, to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

Obs. In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as *enlargements* of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, *Alexander Magnus rex Mæcædonum erat, Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians, Alexander* is the Subject, and *rex* the Predicate; *Magnus* being an enlargement of the Subject (*Alexander*), and *Mæcædonum* an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the complement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, *Caesar vicit Gallos, Caesar conquered the Gauls*, the object *Gallos* is a complement of the predicate *vicit*.

§ 211. THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

India mittit æbur, India sends ivory.—Virg.

Hos ego versículos feci, I made these little verses.—Virg.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

Pulchrum est digito monstrari, It is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.—Pers. (Subject, *monstrari*.)

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

Omnia jam fiunt, All the things will now come to pass.—Ov.

Socrætes Graecorum sapientissimus (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.—Cic.

Hannibal Hæmilcæris filius (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hæmilcar.—Nep.

Obs. When the Verb "to be" is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (*σὸπῦλα, tie or land*).

§ 214. APPPOSITION.—Sometimes a Substantive is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

Thēmistocles, *impērātor* Persīco bello, Graeciam servītute libērāvīt, *Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.*—Cic.

Scēlērūm *inventor* Ūlysses, *Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.*—Virg.

Ōleae Mīnerva *inventrix*, *Minerva, inventor of the olive.*—Virg.

Ut ōmittam illas omnium doctrinarum *inventrices* Athēnas, *To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of every branch of learning.*—Cic.

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tulliōla, *dēliciōlae nostrae*, mūnuscūlum tuum flāgītāt, *Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.*—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs*, *oppīdum*, *cīvitas* or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

Cōriōli *oppīdum* captum est, *The town of Corioli was taken.*—Liv.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words “as” or “when:” as,

Dēfēdi rempublicam jūvēnis, *I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.*—Cic.

Nēmo fēre saltat sōbrius, nīsi forte insānit, *Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax is sometimes divided into two parts. SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

Alexander vicit Dariūm, *Alexander conquered Darius.*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds (“agrees”) with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be “governed.” [Syntax of Government.]

First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

Cōnon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.—Nep.

Athēnienses omnium cīvium suōrum pōtēntiam extimescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow citizens.—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

Castor et Pollux ex ēquis pugnāre visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.—Cic.

Vita, mors, divītiæ, paupertas, omnes hōmīnes vĕhēmētissīme permōvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.—Cic.

Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

Sēnātus pōpūlusque Rōmānus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.—Cic.

Tempus nēcēssitasque postūlat, Time and necessity demand.—Cic.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

Orgētōrigis filia et ūnus e filiis captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix ana one of his sons was taken prisoner.—Caes.

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural (= vos): thus *ēgo et tu*, or *ēgo et frāter meus*, both = nos; while *tu et ille*, *tu et frāter*, = vos: as,

Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vālētis, ego et suāvissīmus Cīcero vālēmus, If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).—Cic.

Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, *ēgo et rex, the king and I*, literally, *I and the king*.

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive (“Noun of Multitude”), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

Tūra fērant plācentque nōvum pia turba Quirīnum, Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.—Ov.

Dēsectam sēgētem magna vis hōmīnum simul immissa corbibus fūdēre in Tiberim, A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the Tiber.—Liv.

Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Jam pauca ārātro jūgēra rēgiae
Mōles rēlinquent,*

Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.—Hor.

— *Nec te [silēbo] mētūende certā*

Phoebe sāgittā,

Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unerring shaft.—Hor.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a Predicate: as, *vīr bōnus, a good man; or vīr est bōnus, the man is good.*

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Omnium assensu comprōbāta orātio est, The speech was approved by the assent of all.—Liv.

Neglectum Anxūri praesidium (est), The garrison at Anxur was not looked after.—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

Pāter mīhī et māter mortuī sunt, My father and mother are dead.—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Sēcundae rēs, hōnōres, impēria, victōriae fortuīta sunt, Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.—Cic.

Lābor vōluptasque sociētate quādam inter sē conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.—Liv.

Obs. 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

Ira et āvāritia impērio pōtentiōra ērant, Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.—Liv.

Obs. 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as, *omnes agri et māria, all seas and lands*; or the Adjective is repeated, as, *agri omnes omniaque māria.*

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

Duo millia Tŷriōrum crucibus affixi sunt, Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.—Curt.

Cāpita conjūratiōnis virgis caesi ac sēcūri percussi sunt, The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.—Liv.

Obs. In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *cāpita* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word “*thing* :” as,

Triste lūpus stābūlis, The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.—Virg.

Turpītudo pējus est quam dōlor, Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.—Cic.

Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.—Cic.

Nullum ānimal, quod sanguinem hābet, sine corde esse pōtest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.—Cic.

Obs. The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

Arbōres sēret diligens agricolā, quārum adspiciet baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.—Cic.

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive *baccam* in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 265.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate: as,

Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, quod est (not qui sunt) oppidum Boeōtiaē, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.—Caes.

Lævis est ânîmi, justam glôriam, qui (not quæ) est fructus vërae virtutis hönestissîmus, rëpudiäre, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.—Cic.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive :

Säpientes sôli, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rëbus suis, Wise men only—what properly belongs to wealth—are content with what is their own.—Cic.

CHAPTER XXXV.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence: as,

Ego rëges ëjëci, vos tyrannos intrödücütis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.—Auct. ad Her. See also § 219.

Obs. Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, in the *Obliqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject after the following classes of Verbs:—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become*: as, *sum, existo, fiô, ëvädô (to issue, turn out) nascor (to be born), etc.*

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence*; also, *gesture*: as, *mänëo (to remain), düro (to endure), incëdo, (to walk), etc.*

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing*: as, *nömînor, dicor, appellor [also audio, in sense of to be called]; creor, fio, dësignor, institucr, etc.*

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *to be thought*: as *videor, häbeor, existîmor, dücor, etc. : as,*

(1.) *Nëmo rëpente fit turpissîmus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.—Juv.*

(2.) *Münitiônes integræ mänëbant, The fortifications remained entire.—Caes.*

Divum incëdo rëgîna, I walk queen of the gods.—Virg.

(3.) *Nüma Pompilius rex creätus est, Numa Pompilius was made king.—Eutr.*

Justitia erga deos religiô dicitur, Justice towards the gods is called religion.—Cic.

(4.) *Sätis altitüdo müri exstructa vidëbätur, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.—Nep.*

In rëbus angustis ânîmôsus et fortis apparë, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.—Hor.

CHAPTER XXXVI.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative: as,

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God built the world.—Cic.

Glōria virtutem tanquam umbra sēquitur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.—Cic.

Nulla ars imitāri sollertiam nātūrae pōtest, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passive, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *māgister puerum laudat, The master praises the boy,* becomes in the Passive, *puer a māgistro laudātur, The boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only *impersonally*: as,

Invidētur praestanti flōrentique fortūnae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.—Cic. (Lit., *Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.*)

Non parcētur lābōri, Labour shall not be spared.—Cic. (Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour.*)

Obs. 3. The principal *apparent* exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

Hac nocte mirum somniāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.—Plaut.

Vērissimum jusjūrandum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.—Cic.

Obs. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.

§ 236. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus, *sitio, I thirst (for) = I desire eagerly*; *contrēmo, I tremble (at) = I fear*; *horreo, I shudder (at) = I dread*; *fleo, I weep (for) = I lament*; *rīdeo, I laugh (at) = I ridicule*; *dēpereo, I am dying (for) = I desperately love*: as,

Sanguinem nostram sitiēbat, He was thirsting for our blood.—Cic.

Sēquāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrēbant, The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.—Caes.

Contrēmere hastam, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.

§ 238. *All* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *circum, per, praeter, trans, süper, and subter,* become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Timötheus Pölöponnēsūm circumvñhens Læcöñiam pöpülätus est, Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.

Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.—Nep.

§ 239. *Many* Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in,* and *some* verbs compounded with *ante, con, ex,* and *prae,* become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Näves Genuam accessērunt, The ships reached Genoa.—Liv.

Urbem invādunt, They fall upon the city.—Virg.

Nēmīnem convēni, I have met no one.—Cic.

Sociētätē coīre, To form a partnership.—Cic.

Mödum excödēre, To exceed the limit.—Cic.

Quantum Galli virtüte cētēros mortäles praestārent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.—Liv.

Nēmo eum in ämicītia antecessit, no one excelled him in friendship.—Nep.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, *püdet, it shameth; taedet, it wearieth; poenitet, it repenteth; püget, it grieveth; and misēret, it pitieth (affects with pity);* take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as,

Mē püget stultītiaē meae, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.

Timöthei post mortē pöpülum jüdiciī süi poenituit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet, it is becoming, and dädēcet, it is unbecoming,* take an Accusative of the Person: as,

Orätörem minīme dēcet irasci, It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.—Cic.

Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *jüvat, it delights; lätet, fallit, fūgit, praetērit, it escapes (notice); öportet, it behoves,* take an Accusative of the Person.

2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *döceo, I teach* (with its compounds); *cēle, I conceal, hide from:* as,

Quis müsicam döcuit Epämīnondam, Who taught Epaminondas music?—Nep.

Non cēlāvi te sērmōnem hōmīnum, *I have not kept from you the men's discourse.*—Cic.

Obs. Accusative after a Passive Verb. When a Verb of teaching, &c. is turned into the Passive (see § 234, *Obs.* 1), the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

L. Marcius omnes militiæ artes edoctus fuerat, *Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.*—Liv.

§ 244. Some verbs of asking, entreating, and demanding take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *oro*, *I entreat*, *rōgo*, *I ask or entreat*; and *posco*, *rēposco*, *flāgīto*, *I demand*: as,

Lēgāti Verrem simūlacrum Cērēris rēposcunt, *The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.*—Cic.

Caesar frūmentum Aeduos flāgītābat, *Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.*—Caes.

Obs. When a verb of asking, &c. is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative: as,

Prīmus rōgātus est sententiam, *He was first asked for his opinion.*—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative.*—Verbs signifying to name, to make or appoint, to reckon or esteem, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object: as,

Rōmulus urbem ex nōmīne suo Rōmam (*Fact. Acc.*) vōcāvit, *Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

Contempsit Siculos, non duxit (eos) homines (*Fact. Acc.*), *He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

Ancum Martium rēgem (*Fact. Acc.*) pōpūlus creāvit, *The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv.

Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

§ 246. Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* and *circum*, as *transjicio*, *transdūco*, *transporto*, to carry across, and *circumdūco*, to lead around, take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed: as,

Agēsilaus Hellespontum cōpias trājēcit, *Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Pompēius Roscillum omnia sua praesidia circumduxit, *Pompeius led Roscillum round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

Obs. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives remains: as,

Māior multītūdo Germānōrum Rhēnum transdūcitur, *A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity, or relation to*: as, ad, in for *into, inter, prōpē, &c.* See §§ 135, 137.

4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick?* as,

Quaedam bestiōlae unum diem vivunt, *Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

Pēricles quadrāginta annos praefuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Pēdem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sūmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.

Campus Mārathon ab Athēnis circiter millia passuum dēcem ābest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

Milites aggērem lātum pēdes trēcentos trīginta, altum pēdes octōginta extruxērunt, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet broad and 80 feet high.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: as,

Me caecum, qui haec ante non vidērim, My blindness not to have seen this before!—Cic.

O vim maximam errōris, O the enormous power of error!—Cic.

Eheu mē misērum, O hapless me!

Pro deōrum atque hōmīnum fidem! In the name of gods and men!—Cic.

En quātuor āras, Lo, four altars.—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequent found with the Nominative: as, *Ecce tuae litterae (sc. sunt) de Varrōne, There is your letter about Varro!*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative: as, *Vae victis, Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

Hei misēro mihi, Woe to wretched me.—Ter.

6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

Hannibal, *adversum fēmur grāviter ictus, cēcīdit, Hannibal fell everely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

Equus trēmit artūs, *The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

Fēmīnae nūdae brāchia et lācertos, *Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Ter.

Trājectus pēdes, *With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

Pēdibus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.

Capti oculus talpae, *Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).*—Virg.

7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, *induor, amīcior, I clothe, put on myself; exuor, I strip off (from myself); cingor, accingor, I gird on myself; and the like: as,*

Inūtile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

Andrōgei gāleam induitur, *He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg.

8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (*id, hoc, illud, idem, &c.*), and of Adjectives implying number (*unum, multa, pauca, &c.*), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

Idem glōriāri, *To make the same boast.*—Cic.

Omnes muliēres eādē student, *All women have the same inclinations.*—Ter.

Id opēram do, *I strive after this.*—Ter.

Utrumque laetor, *I rejoice at both things.*—Cic.

Discipulos id unum mōneo, *I remind pupils of this one thing.*—Cic.

Saepe non audimus ea, quae ab nātūrā mōnemur, *We often do not hear those things, which we are reminded by nature.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

Obs. 2. The same construction is used even without verbs: as,

Id tempōris, *At that time.*—Cic.

Uōmo id aetātis, *A man of that age.*—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions *magnam* (*maximam*) *partem*, for *the most part*; *vicem*, on *account of*; *sæcus*, *sex*; *cætëra*, in *other respects*; *nihil*, *not at all*: as,

Suëvi maxãmam partem lacte atque pecõre vivunt, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

Tuam vicem sæpe dôleo, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

Liberõrum cãpitum virile sæcus ad decem millia capta, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

Vir cætëra êgrëgius, *A man admirable in other respects.*—Liv.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see § 507.

APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where?* *Whither?* *Whence?*

I. Answer to the Question *Where?*

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Rõmae Constules, *Athënis Archontes*, *Carthãgine Suffëtes*, sive *jũdices*, *quõtannis creãbantur*, *At Rome Consuls*, *at Athens Archons*, *at Carthage Suffetes*, or *judges*, *were elected annually.*—Nep.

Tibũre Rõmam ãmo, *When at Tivoli I am in love with Rome.*—Hor.

Thëbis, *Argis*, *Ulũbris*, *At Thebes*, *Argos (Argi)*, *Uthrae.*—Hor.

Dionũsius Cõrinthi pueros dõcëbat, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*—Cic.

Obs. There can be no doubt that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case with the termination *i* in the Singular. This accounts for the form *ae* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *ai*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as *Carthãgini*, *Lacedaemõni*, *rũri* in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence *ruri* rather than *rũre*, in the country. See § 258.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives: *dõmi*, *at home*; *hũmi*, *on the ground*; *rũre*, more frequently *rũri*, *in the country*; *millitiae*, *belli*, *in the field*: as,

Vir dõmi non solum sed etiam Rõmae clãrus, *A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Roma.*—Liv.

Non eādem dōmi quae militiae fortūna erat plēbi Rōmānae, *The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

Vir dōmi bellique fortissimus, *A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

Forto ēvēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus, *It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

Obs. Dōmi is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae, and alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illā dōmo; in dōmo publicā; in dōmo Caesāris.*

2. Answer to the Question Whither ?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

Cūrius primus ēlēphantos quātuor Rōmam duxit, *Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pausaniam cum classe commūni Cyprum atque Hellespontum nūscant, *They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

Itāliam vēnit, *To Italy he came.*—Virg.

Verba rēfers aures non pervēnicentia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

§ 260. The Accusatives dōmum, *home*; and rus, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Sēmel ēgressi, nunquam dōmum rēvertēre, *Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

Ego rus ibo, atque ibi mānēbo, *I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

3. Answer to the Question Whence ?

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Diōnysius Plātōnem Athēnis accessivit, *Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

Dēmārātus, Tarquīnii rēgis pāter, Tarquīnios Cōrintho fūgit, *Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

Obs. In like manner, dōmo, *from home*; rūre, *from the country*; without a preposition.

CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE GENITIVE.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

Obs. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

A. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *The war of or with Pyrrhus.*

Simulatio amicitiae, *The pretence of friendship.*

Navis auri, *A ship of, i.e. laden with, gold.*

(But a *ship [made] of gold* would be *navis aurea* or *navis ex auro facta*.)

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō*, *for the sake (of)*, which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

Voluptates omittuntur majorum voluptatum adipiscendarum causā, *Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.*—Cic.

Dolores suscipiuntur majorum dolorum effugiendorum grātiā, *Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.*—Cic.

Si quid contra alias leges hujus legis ergō factum est, *If anything has been done contrary to other laws for the sake of this law.*

Obs. 1. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with *causā* and *grātiā*: as, *meā causā*, *for my sake*; *tuā causā*, *for thy sake*.

Obs. 2. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable substantive *instār*, (*in*) *the likeness (of)*; *on the scale of*:

Instār montis equus, *A horse like a mountain.*—Virg.

Plāto mhi unus instār est omnium, *Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.*—Cic.

I. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

Grāves Cyclopum officinae, *The heavy forges of the Cyclops.*—Hor.

In umbrōsis Hēlicōnis ōris, *In the shady regions of Helicon.*—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after

the verb *sum*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed : —

Omnia sunt victōris, All things are (the property) of the conqueror (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

Militum est dūci pārēre, It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.

Nihil est tam angusti ānīmi quam āmare divitias, Nothing is (the characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.—Cic.

Cūjusvis hōmīnis est errāre, It is (the part) of any man to err.—Cic.

Obs. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns : thus we must say, *meum est, it is mine or my duty* ; *tuum est, it is thine or thy duty* ; not *mei, tui est*.

2. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after substantives and words used substantively to denote the whole of which a part is taken : as,

Mōdius trītici, A peck of wheat.—Cic.

Mille hōmīnum vālentium, A thousand of able-bodied men.—Cic.

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Substantives.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these :—*multum, much* (with plus and *plūrimum*) ; *paulum or paullum, a little* (with minus and *mīnimum*) ; *tantum, so much* ; *quantum, how much* ; *ālīquantum, a good deal* (with their diminutives, *tantūlum, quantūlum, aliquidūlum*) ; also, *hoc, this* (*amount*) ; *id, illud, that* (*amount*) ; *ālīquod, some* (*amount*) ; *quicquam, any* (*amount*) *soever* : as,

Multum tempōris, Much (of) time.—Cic.

Āliquidum equōrum et armōrum, A considerable quantity of horses and arms.—Sall.

Tantūlum mōrae, So little delay.—Cic.

Hoc cōpiārum in Hispānias portātum est, This amount of troops was conveyed into the Spains.—Liv. (42, 18, extr.).

Num quidnam nōvi, Is there any news?—Cic.

Id tempōris, At that time.—Cic.

To the above add the indeclinable Substantive *nihil* (*nīl*), *nothing, none of* : as, *nihil māli, no (kind) of evil.*—Cic.

Obs. But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive : hence we have *ālīquid difficile, something difficult* ; *ālīquid difficilīus, something more difficult*.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of Quantity,* Place, or Time, used Substantively: as,

Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.—Sall.

Ubinam gentium } *Where in the world?*—Cic.
Ubi terrarum }

Eo miseriarum, To such a pitch of wretchedness.—Sall.

Postea loci, Afterwards.—Liv.

Inde loci, Thereupon.—Lucr.

* These Adverbs are:

<i>satis,</i>	<i>enough.</i>	}	<i>abunde,</i>	} <i>abundantly.</i>
<i>parum,</i>	<i>too little.</i>		<i>affatim,</i>	

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

Major juvenum, (Thou) elder of the youths.—Hor.

Maxime principum, Greatest of princes!—Hor.

Graecorum oratorum praestantissimi, The most eminent of Greek orators.—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de,* and in certain cases *in, inter,* are used: as,

Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi, The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.—Cic.

Croesus inter reges opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest among kings.—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number: as,

Primi juvenum, First of the youths.—Virg.

Consulum alter, one of the two consuls.—Liv.

3. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) priscæ ac nimis duræ severitatis, A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.—Liv.

Ager quattuor jugerum, A farm of four acres.—Liv.

Vir maximi corporis, A man of very great stature.—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent* is *homo ingeniosus* (not *homo ingenii*); but *a man of great talent* is *homo magni ingenii*.

B. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying *capacity*; also of *desiring*, *experience*, *remembering*, *participating*, *fullness*, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

Thēmistocles p̄rītissīmos belli nāvālis Athēnienses fēcit, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.—Nep.

Omnes immēmōrem bēnēficii ōdērunt, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.—Cic.

Ira impōtens sui est, Anger is incapable of governing itself.—Sen.

Hōmo particeps est rātīōnis et cōgtātīōnis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

1. āvārus,	covetous.	rūdis,	unskilled.
āvīdus,	greedy.	insōlens,	} unaccustomed.
cūpīdus,	eager.	insōlītus,	
stūdiōsus,	fond.	insuētus,	} master of.
fastīdiōsus,	disdainful.	compos,	
invidus,	jealous.	impos,	not master.
tīmīdus,	} fearful.	pōtens,	powerful.
pāvīdus,		impōtens,	not powerful.
libēralis,	liberal.		
prōfusus,	lavish.	3. mēmōr,	mindful.
parcus,	stingy.	immēmōr,	unmindful.
		cūrīōsus,	careful.
		incūrīōsus,	careless.
2. p̄rītus,	skilled.		
imp̄rītus,	unskilled.	4. particeps,	participating.
consciūs,	conscious.	consors,	sharing.
insciūs,	} ignorant.	exsors,	} not sharing.
nesciūs,		foreknowing.	
praesciūs,	knowing.	īnops,	weak.
gnārus,	not knowing.		
ignārus,	foreseeing.	5. plēnus,	full.
prūdēns,	not foreseeing.	īnānis,	empty.
imprūdēns,			

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *édax*, *devouring*; *cāpax*, *holding*.

Obs. Rūdis and prūdēns are also used with in and the Ablative: as, prūdēns in jūre civīli, skilful in civil law.—Cic.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *pātiens (adj.) lābōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *pātiens (part.) lābōres*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

Epāmīnondas ādeo fuit vērītātis diligēns, ut ne jōco quīdem mentirētur, Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.—Nep.

Aliēni appētens, sui prōfusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.—Sall.

C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive: as,

Anīmus mēmīnit *praetēritōrum*, *The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

Nec unquam obliviscar *illius noctis*, *Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

Accusātus est *prōditiōnis*, *He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

Jūdex absolvit *injūriarum* eum, *The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

Absens *prōditiōnis* damnātus est, *He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as,

Appius *de pēcūniis rēpētundis* est postulātus, *Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *vis*, *violence*: as, *de vi* postulare, *damnare*, &c.

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty*, *innocent*, *condemned*: as, *reus*, *noxius*, *innoxius*, *insons*, *mānifestus*, and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Cāpitis hōmīnem condemnare, *To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.

Octūpli damnāri, *To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.*—Cic.

Obs. The Ablative is also used: as, *cāpite* damnāre.—Cic.

3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price* or *Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as *tanti*, *quanti*, *plūris*, *mīnōris*: as,

Quanti Chrysōgōnus dōcet, *At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

Plūris, *mīnōris*, vendēre, *To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a *definite* price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316; and even the Ablatives *magno*, *parvo*, *plūrimo*, *mīnimo*, &c. are of frequent occurrence, where money value is meant.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *floci*, *pīli*, *nauci*, *assio*, to denote that a thing is of *no value at all*: especially in the phrases *floci*, *pīli* facēre, *pendēre*, &c., "*not to care a straw for.*"

4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs *miseror*, *miseresco*, *to pity*; and the Impersonals *miseret*, *miserescit*, *miseretur*, *it causes pity*; *piget*, *it vexes*; *poenitet*, *it repenteth*; *pudet*, *it causes shame*; *taedet*, *pertaesum est*, *it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

O virgo, miserere mei, O maiden, have pity on me!—Ov.

Me piget stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.

Nunquam suscepti negotii Atticum pertaesum est, Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 241.

Obs. 2. *Miseror*, and *commiseror to commiserate*, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

5. Genitive with Interest and Refert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *interest* and *refert*, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person *to whom* a thing is of *importance or benefit*: as,

Quid Milonis intererat interfici Clodium, What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?—Cic.

Refert compositionis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, being used instead: as,

Quid tua id refert, What matters that to you?—Ter.

Vestra interest commilitones, It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.—Tac.

NOTE.—*Refert* probably = *rei fert*, *it contributes to the interest*; and with *interest*, *rei* may be understood: in that case the forms *mea*, *tua*, &c. may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with *rei*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *mea*, *tua*, &c.

Obs. 3. The subject of *interest* (and *refert*) is never a Substantive, but is usually expressed by an Infinitive word or clause.

D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.*): as,

Desine mollium tandem querelarum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.—Hor

Solutus operum, Released from toil.—Hor.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE DATIVE.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object*; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234): as,

Aesōpo quidam lapidem impēgērat, *A person had cast a stone at Aesop.*—Phaedr.

Obs. Here the *direct object* of the action is the *stone* (lapidem) which is *cast*; while the Dative *Aesopo* denotes the *indirect object*, or the person to whom the action has reference.

A. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

(*Dātīvus Commōdī or Incommōdī.*)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for*, *for the good of*: as,

Dōmus dōmīnis aedificātur, non mūrībus, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.—Cic.

Non schōlae sed vitae discimus, We learn not for the school, but for life.—Sen.

Non solum nōbis divītes esse vōlūmus, We wish not to be rich for ourselves only.—Cic.

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of*, *in behalf of*, *pro* must be used: as, *mōri pro patriā, to die for one's country*; *dicere pro aliquo, to speak for any one* (i. e. *in behalf of any one*).

Obs. 2. The *Dativus Commōdi* is also used after Adjectives: see § 298.

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it*; *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; *supplicō, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*: as,

Philōsōphiae semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.—Cic.

Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.—Cic.

Caesāri pro te libentissīme supplicābo, I will most willingly supplicate Caesar for you.—Cic.

Obs. Of course *nūbo* is used only of a woman marrying.

2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (*ἰθός*) by some person : as,

Quid *mihi* Celsus agit, *How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

Hic Marius veniet *tibi* origīne parvā, *Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The Dativus Ethicus is a more delicate shade of the Dativus Commodi.

3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the Dativus Commodi or Incommodi :

1. *To assist* : subvĕnio, succurro, auxiliōr.
2. *To resist, oppose* : rĕsisto, adversor, obnitor, rĕnitor, rĕpugno, obsum, &c.
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)* : fāveo, indulgeo, stūdeo.
4. *To envy, be jealous of* : invideo, aemulor (see Obs. 4).
5. *To please* : plăceo, arrideo.
6. *To serve, obey, benefit* : pāreo, obĕdio, obtempĕro, servio, prōsum.
7. *To trust or distrust* : crĕdo, fīdo, confido, diffīdo.
8. *To spare, refrain from* : parco, tempĕro.
9. *To advise, persuade* : suādeo, persuādeo.
10. *To flatter* : ādūlor, assentor, blandior.
11. *To cure* : mĕdeor, mĕdicor.
12. *To pardon* : ignosco.
13. *To congratulate* : grātūlor.
14. *To revile* : mālĕdico, obtrecto, convicior.
15. *To be angry* : irascor, succenseo.
16. *To protect* : patrōcīnor.
17. *To command* : impĕro, impĕrīto, praecipio, and sometimes dōmīnor, mōlĕror, tempĕro.

With some others.

Hōmīnes hōmīnibus plūrimum et prōsunt et obsunt, *Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.*—Cic.

Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudīni servit, *That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.*—Cic.

Non licet sui commōdi causā, nocēre alteri, *It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.*—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes ējus ipsius artis, cui stūdebāt, p̄imam litēram non pōtērat dicēre, *Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.*—Cic.

Antiōchus se nec impensae, nec lābōri, nec p̄ricūlo parsūrum pollīcēbātur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mēdicī tōto corpōre cūrando, mīnīmae ētiam parti mēdentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Epīcūrus Phaedōni turpissīme mālēdixit, *Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.*—Cic.

Quis Isocrātī est adversātus impensius (quam Aristōtēles), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*

Iis aemulāmur qui ea hābeant quae nos hābere cūpiāmus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want.*—Cic.

Omnībus gentībus ac nātīōnībus impērāre, *To rule over all peoples and nations.*—Cic.

Mōdērārī ānīmo et ōrātīōni cum sis irātus, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally : as, mīhi invīdētur, *I am envied.* See § 234, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Jūvo and adjūvo, *I assist*, always govern the Accusative : as,

Multum pōtes nos āpud Plancum jūvāre, *You are able greatly to help me with Plancus.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. Mēdeor, mēdyeor, *I heal*; and ādūlor, *I flatter*, have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemūlor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative :

Me Agāmemnōnem aemūlari pūtas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.*—Nep.

Obs. 5. Jūbeo, rēgo, and gūberno are always followed by the Accusative : as,

O dīva grātum quae rēgis Antium, *O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium!*—Hor.

Spērāre nos āmīci jūbent, *Our friends bid us hope.*—Cic.

Obs. 6. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative : as,

Haec nobis convēniunt, *These things agree with us.*

Convēnire aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*

Mētuo, tīmeo te, *I fear you.*

_____ tibi, *I am apprehensive for you.*

Consūlo te, *I consult you.*

_____ tibi, *I consult for your interests.*

_____ in te, *I take measures against you.*

Prospīcio, and provīdeo te, *I see you at a distance.*

_____ tibi, *I consult for your interests.*

Cāveo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you.*

_____ tibi, *I am concerned for your safety.*

Tempēro, mōdērōr aliquid, *to regulate, arrange.*

_____ mīhi, irae, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain*

4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

§ 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter

ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have also an Accusative case in addition: as,

Tu mihi terram in-jice, Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).—Virg.

Delphines altis in-cursant ramis, The dolphins course against the high branches.—Ov.

In-cubuit tōro, She leaned upon her couch.—Virg.

Quum prōpēmōdo mūrīs ac-cessisset, When he had almost got up to the walls.—Liv.

Caesāri vēnienti oc-currit, He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.—Caes.

Quum virtūte omnibus prae-stārent, Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour.—Caes.

Nātūra hōmīnis p̄cūdiibus ant̄-cēdit, The nature of man excels brute beasts.—Cic.

Obs. Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

Circumdāre brachia collo, To put the arms about any one's neck.—Ov.

Oppidum vallo et fossā circumdāre, To surround a town with a rampart and moat.—Cic.

5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the *Perfect Tenses* Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My plan has been already long formed.—Cic.

Cui non sunt auditae Demosthēnis vīgiliae, Who is there to whom the night-watchings of Demosthenes are a thing unheard?—Cic.

Obs. The Dative is by the Poets used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb; as,
Barbārus hīc ēgo sum quia non intelligor ulli, Here I am a barbarian, inasmuch as I am understood by none.—Ov.

Nēque cernitur ulli, Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).—Virg.

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the *Gerundive Participle* with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

Quod fērendum est molliter s̄pienti, Which the wise man must bear gently.—Cic.

Semper Ita vivāmus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (esse) nobis arbitremur, Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.—Cic.

6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet*, *it is lawful*; *libet*, *it pleases*; *expēdit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

Licet nēmīni dūcere exercitum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic.

Ei libēbit, quod non licet (ei), *It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic.

Obs. After *licet*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,

Licuit esse Themistocli otīōso, *It was allowed Themistocles to be inactive.*—Cic.

Illis timīdis et ignāvis licet esse, *It is for them to be timid and cowardly*—Liv.

7. Dative with the Verb *Sum*.

§ 296. The Verb *sum* with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

Mīhi est injusta nōverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

Trōja huic loco nōmen est, *This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

Obs. When, as in the last example, a name is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,

Scipio, cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtūte fuit, *Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

In campis, quibus nōmen erat Raudiis, decertāvere, *They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudiis.*—Vell.

8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (*Dativus Commodi*, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying *to be* or *become*; *to give*, *send* or *come*; *to impute* or *reckon*, &c.: as,

Ampla dōmus saepe fit dōmīno dēdēcōri, *A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic.

Pausanias rex Lacēdaemōniōrum vēnit Atticis auxilio, *Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.*—Nep.

Nec timuit sibi nē vitio quis vertēret, *Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor.

Cui bōno fuit, *For whose advantage was it?*—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person: as,

Nec eam rem habuit religiōni, *Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic.

Magno odio esse apud aliquem, *To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.*—Cic.

B. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a *Dativus Commodi*, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives:—

1. *Of Utility* : *ūtilis, commōdus, fructuōsus, &c.*
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury* : *īnūtilis, noxius.*
3. *Of Fitness* : *aptus, accommodātus, idōneus, convēniens, proprius, &c.*
4. *Of Unfitness* : *incommōdus, inconvēniens.*
5. *Of Acceptableness* : *grātus, jūcundus, cārus.*
6. *Of Displeasure* : *ingrātus, injūcundus.*
7. *Of Friendliness* : *bēnignus, āmicus, bēnēvōlus, fidēlis, fidus.*
8. *Of Hostility* : *īnīmīcus, pernīciōsus, mālēvōlus, mālīgnus, mōlestus, irātus, infestus.*
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity* : *sīmīlis, dissīmīlis.*
10. *Of Equality and inequality* : *aequālis, īnaequālis.*
11. *Of Proximity* : *fīnītīmus, vicīnus, prōpinquus.*

Rōmulus multitudīni grātior fuit quam Patrībūs, Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.—Liv.

Deiotārus fidēlis erat Pōpūlo Rōmāno, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.—Cic.

Patriae solum omnībūs cārum est, The soil of our country is dear to all.—Cic.

Sicūli Verri īnīmīci infestique sunt, The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.—Cic.

Hōmo aliēnissīmus mīhi, A man most unfriendly to me.—Cic.

Ingrātam Vēnēri pōne sūperbiam, Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.—Hor.

Numquid irātus es mīhi propter has res, You are not angry with me for these things, are you?—Pl.

Idque eo faciilius crēdēbātur quia sīmīle vēro vīdēbātur, And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.—Cic.

Paupertātem divītīs etiam inter hōmīnes esse aequālem vōlūmus, We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *āmicus, īnīmīcus, fīnītīmus, vicīnus, prōpinquus, &c.*, and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. *Sīmīlis* and *dissīmīlis* are quite as often found with the Genitive : as, *Dēcem sīmīles Nestōris, Ten men the like of Nestor.*—Cic.
Impīi cīves, tui dissīmīlīmi, Impious citizens most unlike yourself.—Cic.

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad* : as,
Multas ad res perūtīles (nōbis) Xēnōphontis librī sunt, The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.—Cic.

CHAPTER XXXIX.—THE ABLATIVE.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in*: as,

Trōjæ vēnit ab ōris, He came from the coasts of Troy.—Virg.

Fāto prōfūgus, An exile by destiny.—Virg.

Carthāgo, stūdiis asperrīma belli, Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.—Virg.

1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from*. See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as *a* or *ab, de, ex, sine*, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See §§ 136, 137.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Vērēcundum Bacchum sanguīneis prōhībēte rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!—Hor.*

Nōdōsā corpus prōhībēre chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.—Hor.

Lībērāre āliquem culpā, To free a man from blame.—Cic.

Vercingētōrix oppugnātiōne destitit, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppīdis vim hostium prōhibent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.—Caes.*

Viri bōni lapīdibus a fōro pellēbantur, Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.—Cic.

Eum ab omni errātiōne libērāvit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.—Cic. (But *libēro* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

§ 307. The Ablative is used after Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from*: as,

Rōbustus ānīmus omni est liber cūrā, *The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

Fāmā atque fortūnis expertes, *Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

§ 308. ōpus est, *there is need*, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative: as,

Auctōritāte nōbis ōpus est, *We have need of authority.*—Cic.

Opus est mātūre factō, *There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles nātus, *born from*; ortus, *sprung from*; gēnītus, *begotten of*: also in the Poets with sātus, ēdītus, creātus, crētus, *sprung from* or *begotten of*: as,

Jōve nātus et Maiā, *Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

Orto Sātūno, *O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor.

Quo sanguīne crētus, *From what blood (family) sprung.*—Virg.

Albā oriundum sacerdotium, *A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

Ōbs. But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to *more remote* origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

Hippocrātes et Epicēdes, nāti Carthāgīne, sed oriundi ab Syracūsis, *Hippocrates and Epicides, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.

Belgae orti sunt a Germānis, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.

3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Means*, or *Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

Sol cuncta suā lūce illustrat et complet, *The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

Helvētīi reliquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt, *The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

(Britanni) equitātu atque essēdis ad flūmen progressi (sunt), *The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

Epāminondas princeps meo iūdicio Graeciae, *Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

Ennius fuit mājor nātu quam Plautus et Naevius, *Ennius was earlier in his period of birth than Plautus and Naevius.*—Cic.

Cornūbus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leōnes, se tūtantur, *Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (the'r) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

Obs. Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person*, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative: see § 234, *Obs.* 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is occasionally used alone: as,

Scribēris Vārio, *Thou shalt be written of by Varius.*—Hor.

§ 312. 1. If the *manner* in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without *cum*:

2. But if the *manner* is expressed by a Substantive alone, *cum* must be used: as,

Miltiādes res Chersonēsi summā aequitāte constituit, *Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

Athēnienses cum silentio auditi sunt, *The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mōdus, rātio, mos, rītus, consuetūdo*, never take the preposition *cum*: as, hoc modo, *in this manner*; Persarū mōre, *after the custom of the Persians*.

Obs. 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, *cum* is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, *cum* cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, ardēre stūdio, *to burn with zeal*; exsultāre gaudio, *to exult with joy*; intērīre (pērīre, mōri) fame, *to die of hunger*; gaudēre (laetāri) āmīci adventu, *to rejoice at the arrival of a friend*; glōriāri victōriā suā, *to boast of his victory*; confidēre nātūrā lōci, *to trust in the nature of the ground*: as,

Delicto dōlēre, correctiōne gaudēre, nos oportet, *We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

Nōmīnibus vētērum glōriantur, *They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

§ 314. The Adjectives, which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, contentus, *contented*, laetus, *rejoicing*, sūperbus, *proud*, frētus, *relying on*, and, less frequently, maestus, *sorrowful*, anxius, *anxious*: as,

Frētus diligentīā vestrā, lissēro brevius, *Relying on your attention, I treat (the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

Paucis contentus, Content with little.—Hor.

Phoebe superbe lyra, Thou Phoebus, proud of thy lyre!—Tib.

Obs. For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *utor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nitior, pōtior*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

Sāpiens rātiōne optime ūtitur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.—Cic.

Plūrīmis mārītīmis rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.—Cic.

Agēsīlāus magnā est praedā pōtītus, Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.—Nep.

Obs. 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

Obs. 2. *Pōtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōtīri*, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

Obs. 3. *Fungor* and *vescor* are sometimes found with the Accusative: as, *Nēque bōni nēque libēralis functus officium est vīri, He has acted the part of neither an honest man nor a gentleman.*—Ter.

Coeptit vesci singūlas, He began to eat them up one by one.—Phaedr.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus, dear*, and *vīlis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,

Viginti tālentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrātes vendīdit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.—Plin.

Quod non ōpus est, asse carum est, What you don't want is dear at any price (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mūtāt quadrāta rōtundis, He changes square for round.—Hor. (With *mulo*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the means by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives *magno, at a high price*; *permagno, plūrīmo, at a very high price*; *nīmo, at too high a price*; *parvo, at a low price*; *mīnīmo, for a very low price*; *nīhilo, for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive: as,

Permagno dēcūmas vendīdisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.—Cic.

Non pōtest parvo res magna constare, A great thing cannot cost little.—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fullness or want* often govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

Germanīa rivis flūmīnibusque abundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.—Sen.

Neptūnus ventis implēvit vēla sēcundis. Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.—Virg.

Vōluptāte virtus saepe cāret, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).—Sen.

Cēra rēferta nōtis, A wax tablet full of marks.—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which*; as, *implēre ollam dēnāriōrum, to fill a pot with denaries, Cic.* Adjectives of *filling* usually take a Genitive (§ 276). Of Verbs of *want* *cāreo* takes always an Ablative; *indigeo*, usually a Genitive; *ēgeo*, either the Genitive or Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficere, instruere, ornare, &c.*, come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

Praedā afficit pōpūlāres suos, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.—Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Praeditus, endowed with*, also governs the Ablative: as,

Mens est praedita mōtu sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.—Cic.

4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse traditur excelsā staturā, cōtōre candido, tērtibus membris, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.—Suet.

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, *Obs. 1.*

5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nihil est otiosā sēnectūte (= quam otiosa senectus) jūcundius, Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.—Cic.

Tullus Hostilius Rōmūlo (= quam Romulus) fuit fērocior, T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.—Liv.

Scimus sōlem multo mājōrem esse terrā (quam terram), We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is rare in prose, when the Accusative is a Substantive, but frequent in poetry: as,

Cur olivum sanguine vipērino (= quam sanguinem viperinum) cautius vitat, Why does he avoid the olive-oil more cautiously than the viper's blood?—Hor.

Obs. 2. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,

Miltiades amīciōr (fuit) omnium libertātī quam suae dōmīnātīōnī, Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign power.—Nep.

Obs. 3. The use of the Ablatives *spe, expectatione, opinione, aequo, justo, sòtto*, after the comparative, is peculiar, and must be explained by *quam est* or *erat*: as,

Opiniòne omnium majorem cepi dolorem, I experienced greater grief than all thought I should (lit. greater than the opinion of all men).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus, worthy*, and *indignus, unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

Virtus imitatioe, non invidia, digna est, Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.—Cic.

Quam multi luce indigni sunt, How many are unworthy of the light of day!—Sen.

6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes by *how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

Turres denis pedibus quam muri altiòres sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.—Curt.

Q. Pompèius, biennio quam nos major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero) by two years.—Cic.

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingeniòsior, hoc docet laboriòsius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.—Cic.

7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Plàto ùno et octogèstimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.—Cic.

Extrēmā puèriliā miles fuit summi impèratoris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.—Cic.

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition in is generally used: as,

Aurigandi arte in adulescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.—Suet.

Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.—Cic.

Obs. The following Ablatives are exceptions: *die, by day*; *nocte, by night* (but also *de die, de nocte*); *vespère s. vespèri, in the evening*; *tempore, in time, in season*: which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition in: as,

Agamemnon vix decem annis ùnam cepit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.—Nep.

Sēnātus dēcrēvit, ut lēgāti Jūgurthae in diēbus proxīmis dēcem Italiā dēcēdērent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or *post* after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning :

<i>Accusative.</i>	<i>Ablative.</i>
ante or post tres annos	tribus annis ante or post.
„ post tertium annum	tertio anno ante or post.
tres ante or post annos	tribus ante or post annis.
tertium ante or post annum	tertio ante or post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

Annis quingentis et dēcem post Rōmam conditam Līvius fabulam dedit, Līvius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of Rome.—Cic.

Obs. When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used :

Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.
 Post tres annos quam vēnērat.
 Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.
 Post annum tertium quam vēnērat.

Or *post* may be omitted :

Tertio anno quam vēnērat.
 All these expressions signify equally, *Three years after he had come.*

8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand; laevā, sinistra, on the left hand; terrā mārīque, on sea and land; bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as,

Intōnuit laevā, It thundered on the left hand.—Virg.

Terrā mārīque conquirere, To make search by sea and land.—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus*, *terra*, *rēgio*, *via*, *iter*, are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them : as,

Athēnienses lōco idōneo castra fēcērunt, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

Aurēliā viā prōfectus est, *He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition : as,

Quis tōto mārī lōcus tūtus fuit, *What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

Tōtā Asiā, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

§ 331. In all cases besides the above a Preposition must be used : as,

In Itāliā nullus exercītus (erat), *There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

In hac solitūdīne cāreo omnium collōquio, *In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place : as,

Silvisque agrisque viisque corpōra foeda jacent, *O'er forest, field and highway the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute* : as,

His rebus cognītis, *Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur*, *Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.*—Caes.

Pythāgōras Tarquīnio Sūperbo regnante in Itāliam vēnit, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit. Tarquinius Superbus reigning).*—Cic.

Aliquid salvīs ēgībūs āgēre, *To do a thing without breaking the laws.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples : sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object : as,

Caesar, expōsīto exercītū, ad hostes contendit, *Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.*—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause : as,

Nondum comperto, in quam rēgionem vēnisset, It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.—Liv.

Excepto quod non simul esses, cētēra laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.—Hor.

Obs. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives *audito, cognito, comperto*, and the like.

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle : as,

Nātus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerōne et Antōnio consūlibus, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.—Suet.

Si se invito transire cōnārentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).—Caes.

CHAPTER XL.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to : as,

Recte te, Cyre, beātum fērunt, With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.—Cic.

Et tu, Brūte, And thou too, Brutus!

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste, &c.*, with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection *O*, especially in the Poets : as,

O lux Dardāniae, O thou light of the land of Troy!—Virg.

O dēcus impērii, O thou glory of the empire!—Lucan.

Obs. This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250 : the Vocative is used only in *speaking to or invocation*.

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative : as,

Audi tu pōpūlus Albānus, Hear, O thou people of Alba!—Liv.

Obs. Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative ; for it is found even without Apposition : as,

Agēdum pontifex publicus pōpūli Rōmāni, praei verba, Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!—Liv.

CHAPTER XLI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things)*
—Ter.

Parvum parva decent, *Small (things) befit a small (man)*.—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum*, *of many persons*; *multarum rerum*, *of many things*. [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things*.]

Obs. 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti*, *learned men*. But in the Singular *vir* or *homo* is usually added: as, *homo doctus*, *a learned man*.

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives*.—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus*, *at the top, the top of*; *infimus* or *imus*, *at the bottom, the bottom of*; *medius*, *the middle*; *extremus*, *last, at the end of*; *primus*, *first, at the beginning of*; *reliquus*, *remaining, the remainder of*; *dimidiatus*, *halved, the half of*: as,

Ad imam quercum, *At the foot of an oak*.—Phaedr.

Unus dimidiatusque mensis, *One month and a half*.—Cic.

Extremā hieme, *At the end of winter*.—Cic.

Reliqua vita, *The rest of life*.—Cic.

Oss. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vitæ* (= *reliqua vita*), Liv.

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs*.—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego eum a me *invitissimus* dimisi, *I parted with him very unwillingly*.
—Cic.

Plūs hodie boni *imprudens* feci, quam *sciens* ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did willingly*.—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invītus*, *unwilling*, *unwillingly*; *laetus*, *joyful*, *joyfully*; *libens* = *libenter*, *gladly*, *with pleasure*; *sciens*, *knowing*, *knowingly*; *imprūdēns*, *unwitting*, *unwittingly*; *impērītus*, *unskilled*, *unskilfully*; also, *mātūtīnus*, *in the morning*; *prōnus*, *on one's face*; *sūpīnus*, *on one's back*; *sublīmīs*. *aloft*.

§ 345. *Prior*, *prīmus*, *postērior*, *postrēmus*, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.

Hispania postrēma omnium provinciārum perdōmīta est, Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.—Liv.

Obs. The use of *prior*, *prīmus*, and *postērior*, *postrēmus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius*, *prīmum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit*, means *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit*, *he first spoke, and then*, etc.

Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque habet [hērus meus] plus sapiētiāe quam lapis, Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).—Pl.

Dēcet nobīs cārīorem esse patriam quam nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted: as,

Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hōmīnis doctiōris quam fuit Claudiūs. These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudiūs.—Gell.

Argentum reddidisti L. Cordio, hōmīni non grātīōsīōri, quam Cn. Calidiūs est, You restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calidiūs.—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Ego hōmīnem callīdiōrem vīdī nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem (= quam Phormio est), I never saw a cleverer fellow than Phormio.—Ter.

Patrem tam plācīdum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovis est), I make your father as quiet as a sheep.—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. Plus and amplius, *more*, and minus, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction : as,

Non *plus quam* quattuor millia effugerunt (not effugit), *Not more than four thousand escaped.*—Liv.

Pictores antiqui non sunt usi *plus* (not pluribus) *quam* quattuor coloribus, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.*—Cic.

Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.*—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, *magis* is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree : as,

Corpōra magna *magis* quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

Paulli oratio fuit *verior* quam *gratior* populo, *The speech of Paulus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree : as,

Senectus est *naturā loquacior*, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—Cic.

Voluptas, *quum maior* est, omne animi lumen extinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro* : as,

Proelium *atrocius quam pro* numero pugnantium, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut* : as,

Maior sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.

• Damna *maiora sunt quam quae* aestimari possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

§ 352. Atque and ac are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives : as,

Artius atque hederā, *More closely than ivy.*—Hor.

Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum* : as,

Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat. Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.—Sall.

Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse morum studiorumque distantia, There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.—Cic.

Dicam quam brevissimē, I will speak as briefly as possible.—Cic.

Obs. We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of :

1. *Unus* or *ūnus* omnium : as,

P. Scaevolam ūnum nostrae civitatis et ingenio et justitiā praestantissimum audco dicere, I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.—Cic.

Miltiades et antiquitate generis et gloriā majōrum ūnus omnium maximē florēbat, Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.—Nep.

2. By *longē* or *multo* : as,

Alcibiades omnium aetatis suae multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative : as,

Tam sum mītis quam qui lenissimus, (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.—Cic.

Tam sum amicus rēpublicae quam qui maximē, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.—Cic.

§ 356. “*All the best,*” “*all the wisest,*” and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative : as,

Sapientissimus quisque acquissimō animo mōritur, All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.—Cic.

Altissima quaeque flūmina minimo sōno labuntur, (All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.—Curt.



CHAPTER XLII.—PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.

Nos, nos consules dēsūmus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty)!—Cic.

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum, vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri, vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *voluntas*.—Cic.

Obs. Nostri, vestri, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of noster, vester, used abstractly. Thus, mēmōr nostri = mindful of our interest (i. e. of us.)

2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui, sibi, se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

Nicias tuā sui mēmōriā dēlectātur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.—Cic.

Bestiis hōmīnes ūti possunt ad suam ūtīlītātem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

Hannibālem sui cīves ē civītāte ējēcērunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.—Cic.

Cātīlina admōnēbat ālium ēgestātis, ālium cūpīdītātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.—Sall.

Sua cūjusque ānīmantis natūra est, Every living creature has its own nature.—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui, sibi, se*, and *suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially

when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Prōcūlus) dixisse fertur, a se visam esse Rōmūlum, *Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnīre ōportēre, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

Apud mātrem recte est, *All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

De frātre confido ita esse ut semper vōlui, *As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

Obs. The Possessive Pronouns often denote something *proper* or *favourable to*: as, suo loco, suo tempore, *at a favourable place or time.*

4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. Hic is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

Ōpus vel in hac magnificentiā urbis conspiciendum, *A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

Qui haec vitupērāri vōlunt, *Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

Sex. Stōla, jūdex hic noster, *Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.*—Cic.

§ 365. Ille is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Ex suo regno sic Mithridātes prōfūgit, ut ex eōdem Ponto Mēdēa illa quondam prōfūgisse dicītur, *Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

§ 366. When hic and ille are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote: as,

Caesar bēnēficiis atque mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integrītate vitae Cato. *Ille mansuetūdine et misericordiā clarus factus, huic sēvēritas dignitatem addidērat, Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency: on the latter severity had conferred distinction.*—Sall.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you* or *that of yours*: as,

De istis rēbus expecto tuas littēras, Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.—Cic.

Ista oratio, That speech (which you make).—Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

Iste vir optimus, That excellent man of yours (ironically).—Cic.

Obs. The distinction in meaning between *hic, ille, iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdōte praetore. Is quum hāberet unicam filiam, eam bōnis suis hērēdem instituit, P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.—Cic.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

(Multos) illustrāvit fortuna dum vexat (sc. eos), Many Fortune has made famous while persecuting (them).—Sen.

Non mōdo non invidētur illi aetāti, vērum etiam fāvētur (sc. ei), We not only do not envy that time of life, but we even favour it.—Cic.

Obs. Sometimes the pronoun is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

Huic meae vōluntāti ut fāveas adjūtorque (sc. ejus), sis, That you would favour this my intention, and be the furtherer (of it).—Cic.

§ 375. *Idem* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem hōnestum, (There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam prōfundere pro patriā pūrāti essent, idem glōriæ jactūram ne mīnīmam quidem facere vellent, There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

Quaeram ex ipsā, I will enquire of the woman herself.—Cic.

Accipio quod dant; mihi enim satis est, *ipsis non satis*, I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.—Cic.

Ibi mihi Tulliola mea fuit praesto, natali suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday*.—Cic.

Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antonius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years*.—Cic.

§ 377. Ipse, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “me ipse laudo,” I (but not another person) praise myself; but “me ipsum laudo,” I praise myself (but not another person): as,

Non exgeo medicinā [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse consolor, I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.—Cic.

Drusus se ipse interemit, *Drusus slew himself* [i. e. others did not slay him].

Frātre[m] suum dein seipsum interfecit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself*.—Tac.

6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation*.—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, idem
quālis	tālis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)
ADVERBS.	
ut	ita
quāliter	tāliter (rare)
quantōpēre	tantōpēre
quōties (-ens)	tōties (-ens)

Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commōvent, *Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born*.—Cic.

Eādem utilitatis quae honestatis est rēgula, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour*.—Cic.

Quāles . . . principes, tāles . . . cives, *Like rulers, like people*.—Cic.

Tantas opes quantas nunc habet, non habēret, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses*.—Cic.

Quōtiescunque dico, tōties mihi videtur in iudicium vēnīre, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial*.—Cic.

Obs. 1. After *talis*, *tantus*, *tot* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *qualis*, *quantus*, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam talis vir (sc. qualis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Prythee, being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

Conseruere urbes *tantas* atque *tales* (sc. *quales* eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable* (as those).—Cic.

Obs. 2. It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *idem*: but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic*, *ille*, or *iste*. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor qui dicitur Jovis, Yonder splendour which is called (that of Jupiter).—Cic.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause: as,

Themistocles noctu de servis suis [eum] *quem habuit fidelissimum*, ad Xerxem misit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives *qualis*, *quantus*, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Quum talis esset qualem te esse video, *Since he was such a man as I see you to be.*—Cic.

Nullam unquam vidi tantam (contionem), quanta nunc vestra est, *I never saw so large a meeting as yours now is.*—Cic.

Obs. Talis, tantus are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. *Aliquis* *some one*, is more definite than *quis*. *Aliquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum*, *si*, *nisi*, *ne* and *num*: as,

Gravis aliquis casus, *Some severe calamity.*—Cic.

Si quis quid reddit, *If one repays anything.*—Ter.

Divitiacus Caesarem obsecravit, *ne quid gravius in fratrem statucret*, *Divitiacus besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is similar to *quis*, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position; as,

Quid, si hoc voluit quispiam Deus? *What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter.

§ 385. *Quidam*, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable: as,

Quidam ex advocatis intelligere se dixit, non id agi, ut verum invē-

nirētur, *One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

Habitant hic quaedam mulierculae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

§ 386. The substantive quisquam and the adjective ullus, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions, and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine* : as,

Iustitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam habet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sociis nemo quidquam tale conatur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtute neque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus, *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompeio afferre possit? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

§ 388. Quisque denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suus* : as,

Sibi quisque maxime consulit, *Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

Suae quemque fortunae maxime poenitet, *Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

Obs. In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic : as,

Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. Quisque is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. Alius, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another* ; alter, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things) : as,

Proferēbant alii purpūram, tus alii, gemmas alii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLIII.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

A. To state a proposition ; or, Predicatively.

B. To ask a question ; or, Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

A. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dextrā laevāque duo māria claudunt (nos), On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, Pleasure wins upon our senses.—Cic.

Obs. With *jam pridem*, *jam dudum*, the present tense has the force of a present perfect: as, *jam pridem cūpio, I have long desired* (Cic.): so, *jam dudum flēbam, I had been for some time weeping* (Ov.). In poetry and in later writers, they are also used with the perfect tenses.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit, While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.—Caes.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Anus subtēmen nēbat: praeterea ūna ancillūla erat; ea texēbat, An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl (herself) was weaving.—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Archytas nullam cāpitālīorem pestem quam vōluptātem corpōris dicēbat ā nātūrā dātā, Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.—Cic.

Ut Rōmae consules, sic Carthāgine quōtannis annui bīni rēges creābantur, As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.—Nep.

Obs. For the use of this tense with *jam pridem*, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cras ingens ūērābimus aequor, To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.—Hor.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense*.—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *facti* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est munere, No one has lived (Pres.-Perf.) too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past.-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, *after that*; *ut primum, simul atque (ac), as soon as*; *ut, ubi, when*; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as,

Pelopidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, configere, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.—Nep.

Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.

Ut Hostus cecidit, confestim Romana inclinatur acies, As soon as Hostus fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, *Hannibal anno tertio postquam domo profugerat, in Africam venit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. But *quum, when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

Progeniem Trojana a sanguine duci audierat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.—Virg.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense*.—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have taken place* by the time spoken of: as,

Romam quum venero, quae perspexero, scribam ad te, When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.—Cic.

Dum tu haec leges, ego illum fortasse convenero, While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.—Cic.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit caelesti vitae simile, This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.—Cic.

Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus, If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.—Cic.

De Carthāgine vēreri non ante dēsnam, quam illam excisam esse cognōvēro, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

Obs. But the future sense is sure to be expressed in *one* of the clauses, as in the above examples.

B. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

I. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, ābūtēre pātentiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut vālet? ut mēmīnit nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax est Gallina Sýro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē.*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

Tarquinius rex interrōgāvit: Estisne vos lēgāti ōrātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? Sūmus—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—Liv.

Dāturne illa hōdie Pamphīlo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter.

Obs. *Ne* is always joined to the *first* word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with *non*, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

Cānis *nonne* sīmīlis lūpo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne emōri per virtūtem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num.*—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

Num negare audes, Do you dare deny it?—Cic.

Num facti Pamphilum piget, Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?—Ter.

Num Viscellinum amici regnum appetentem debuērunt adjuvare, Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?—Cic.

2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second, while *-nē* is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?—Cic.

Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?—Ter.

Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or no?—Cic.

Obs. 1. Necne and annon, "or no," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. Ne is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative is stated in the form "or no," necne.

Obs. 3. The first particle (utrum) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. *An* is sometimes apparently used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? An Pamphilus venit? What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?—Ter.

Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Siciliam virtute tuā liberatam? What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?—Cic.

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
<i>utrum,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
<i>-nē,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>-ne</i>	

Obs. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.

CHAPTER XLIV.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense.*—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions; or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

Dissolve frīgus, ligna sūper fōco large rēpōnens, Thaw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire.—Hor.

Fessae dāte sēta cārīnae, Crown with chaplets my tired bark.—Ov.

Carpe diem, Seize the (present) day.—Hor.

Salve! Ave! Hail to thee, farewell!—Cic.

Obs. Not in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* (never non) * and in double sentences by *ne . . . nēve* (neu); *nēve . . . nēve*.

§ 418. *Future Tense.*—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws: as,

Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, nēve ūrito, Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.—XII. Tables.

Rēgio impērio duo sunt, Let there be two persons with regal power.—Cic.

Non sātis est pulchra esse poēmāta, dulcia sunt, It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet.—Hor.

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, cāveto, Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard.—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used (*not* in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person: as,

Aut bibat aut ābeat, Let him either drink or begone.—Cic.

Stātus, incessus, vultus, ōcūli, tēneant dēcōrum, Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.—Cic.

Injūrias fortūnae, quas ferre nōqueas, dēfūgiendo rēlinquas, The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from.—Cic.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by *nē* (also *nēmo, nīhil*) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

Nē quid rēi tibi sit cum Sāguntīnis, Meddle not with the Saguntines—Cic.

Ne transīeris Ibērum, Cross not the Ebro.—Liv.

Nīhil ignōvērīs, Show no charity for anything!—Cic.

CHAPTER XLV.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

- (A). An hypothesis.
- (B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).
- (C). A wish.
- (D). Purpose or result.
- (E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscērem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.

(B). *Cur dubītas quid de rēpublicā sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.

Non dubītat quin Trōja brēvi pēritūra sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.—Cic.

(C). *Vāleas et mēmīnēris nostri, May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.

(D). *Lēgibus servīmus ut libēri esse possīmus, We submit to the laws that (Purpose) we may be able to be free.*—Cic.

Accīdit ut ūnā nocte omnes Hermae dejicērentur, It happened that (Result) in one night all the Hermae were demolished.—Nep.

(E). *Dōcent quanto in discriminē sit Nōlāna res, They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

- (1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425); or,
- (2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive (“objective”) assertion.

Obs. The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood.

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past

Present and Future Time.

PRESENT	{	Scio quid āgas,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
		Scio quid ēgēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
		Scio quid actūrus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do</i>
PRESENT PERFECT	{	Cognōvi quid āgas,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
		Cognōvi quid ēgēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done</i>
		Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>
FUTURE.	{	Audiam quid āgas,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
		Audiam quid ēgēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done</i>
		Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

Past Time.

PAST IMPERF.	{	Sciēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
		Sciēbam quid ēgissēs,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
		Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAST INDEFINIT.	{	Cognōvi quid āgēres,*	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
		Cognōvi quid ēgissēs,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
		Cognōvi quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PAST PERFECT.	{	Cognōvēram quid āgēres,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
		Cognōvēram quid ēgissēs,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
		Cognōvēram quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pecuniae *invenit*, ut unius imperatoris praeda finem attulerit tributorum, Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.—Cic.

Obs. The Historical Present (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,

Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qui dicērent, The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.—Caes.

1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

Obs. For the sake of convenience, the use of the Indicative in Hypothetical sentences is brought to this place.

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.* — If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood : as,

Si est boni consilii ferre opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium,

etc., *If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.*—Cic.

Si tōnuīt, etiām fulsīt, If it thundered, it also lightened

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

Si nēgem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.—Cic.

Tu si hic sis, ālīter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.—Ter.

Nēcassēm jam te verbēribus, nisi irātus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.—Cic.

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *may have happened*: as,

Me dies, vox, lātēra, dēficiant, si hoc nunc vōciferāri vēlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.—Cic.

Si scīeris (Perfect) aspīdem occulte lātēre uspiam,..... imprōbe fēcēris, nisi monueris altērum ne assīdeat, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.—Cic.

Obs. In such cases we in English often use a *Past Tense Subjunctive*, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not actually taking place*, whether *now* (*Past-Imperfect*), or in the *Past* (*Past-Perfect*): as,

Sāpientia non expētērētur si nihil effīcēret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.—Cic.

(Si) ūno praelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.—Liv.

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

Mālus cīvis Cn. Carō fuit:—fuerit aliis; tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carō was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?)—Cic.

Vērum, ut ita sīt, tamen non pōtes hoc praedicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.—Cic.

2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used in dependence upon clauses or sentences denoting doubt, uncertainty, or conditionality (see following sections).

Obs. But the Subjunctive cannot stand by itself with this force.

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Quālis sit ānīmus ipse ānīmus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.—Cic.

(Here the *Direct Question* would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)

Diogēnes dispūtare solēbat, quanto rēgem Persarum vitā fortunāque sūpērāret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Quanto regem Persarum supero?* *How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

Dii utrum sint, neque sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether here are gods or no?—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Utrum dii sunt, necne sunt?*)

Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.—Cic.

(*Direct Question*: *Cur luna deficit?*)

Obs. Thus, *quae tu scias scio*, is *I know what it is you know*: but *quae tu scis, scio*, *What you know, I know also*.

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

Quaero . . . num, aliter ac nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?—Cic.

Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subdificilis, num quando amici novi veteribus sint antepōnendi, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?—Cic.

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaeritur,	utrum . . .	an . . .	an . . .
	-nē . . .	an . . .	an . . .
	(omitted) . . .	-nē . . .	-nē . . .
	num . . .	an . . .	an . . .

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio*, *nescio*, *dūbito*, *dūbium est*, *incertum est*: as,

Aristotēlem, excepto Platōne, haud scio an recte dixerim principem philosophōrum, With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.—Cic.

Dūbito an Vēnūsiam tendam, et ibi exspectem de lēgionibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.—Cic.

Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nēmīni, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.—Cic.

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "I don't know whether."

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating perplexity, where the Verb *dūbito* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

Quid hoc hōmīne faciātis, What are ye to do with this man?—Cic.

Quid aliud faceret, What else was he to do?—Cic.

Quid enūmerem artium multitudine, Why should I enumerate c multitude of arts?—Cic. (*Quid enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optativus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

Intēream si vāleo stare, May I be a dead man, if I can stand bail!—Hor.

Vāleant cives mei, sint beati, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!—Cic.

Especially with *utinam, O that!* as,

Utinam mōdo cōnāta perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express mutual encouragement: as,

Dum vivimus vivāmus, While we live let us live!

Imitēmur nostros majōres, Let us imitate our ancestors!—Cic.

Obs. In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmīnerim*: as,
Mēmīnerīmus, Let us remember!

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable: as,

Utinam prōmissa liceret non dāre, Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!—Cic.

Utinam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Caesāre societatem nunquam coisses aut nunquam dirēmisses, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar. or else had never broken it off.—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut* :

(1.) *Opto*, *I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive): as,

Optāvit ut in currum patris tollērētur, *He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) *Vōlo*, *Nōlo*, and *Mālo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted: as,

Mālo te sāpiens hostis mētuat, *quam stulti cives laudent*, *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

Nōlo accusātor in iudicium pōtēntiam affērat, *I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ūt* (*ūtī*), *quō*, *that, in order that*; *nē* (or *ūt nē*), *lest, in order that . . . not*; *quīn*, *quōmīnus*, *that not, to denote Purpose and Result.*

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

(a.) Purpose.

Rōmāni ab arātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum, ut dictātor esset, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.

Pylādes Ōrestem se esse dixit, ut pro eo nēcārētur, *Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of *commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c.* (see § 451).

(b.) Result.

Tarquinius sic Servium dilīgēbat, ut is ejus vulgo hābērētur filius, *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic.

Tempērantia sēdat appētitiōnes et efficit ut hae rectae rātiōnī pūreant, *Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

Saepe fit ut, ii qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

Si haec nuntiatio vērā non est, sēquitur ut falsa sit, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrasylbulo contigit ut patriam liberaret, *It fell to the lot of Thrasylbulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

Obs. The phrases, sequitur, *it follows*; restat, *it remains*; necesse est, *it is necessary*; æquum, justum est, *it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *ne* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour*; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

Civitatī persuāsit ut de finibus suis exirent, *He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

Te hortor ut hos libros de philosophiā studiōse lēgas, *I urge you to read these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

Præcor nē me dēsēras, *I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.

Obs. 2. Jūbeo, *I order*; vëto, *I forbid*; cōnor, *I attempt*; and, sometimes, nitior, *I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

Jūbet nos Pythius Apollo noscēre nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

Lex pëgrinūm vëtat in mūrum ascendēre, *The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

Ter sunt cōnati impōnēre Pëlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg.

Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpēre nititur, *Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 3. *Impëro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as, Ipsos abdūci impërābat, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 453. *Quo*.—The Conjunction *quo*, *in order that; that thereby*, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose: as,

Corrūpisse dicitur Cluentius jūdiciū pëcūniā, quo inimicum suum innocētē condēmnāret, *Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause: as,

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab impëritis tēneatur, *A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here *quo* = *ut eo*.)

Obs. 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a result.

Obs. 2. Concerning non *quo*, *not that*, see § 487. Obs. 1.

§ 454. *Nē* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a Purpose, *ut* being omitted; it is equivalent to *ut non, quo non, in order that . . . not; lest*: as,

Nō) esse laudātor, nē videar adūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

Gallinae avesque reliquae pennis fovēt pullos, ne frīgōre laedantur, *Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nē quis	instead of	ut nēmo,	that no one.
nē ullus	„ „	ut nullus,	that none.
nē unquam	„ „	ut nunquam,	that never.
nē usquam	„ „	ut nusquam,	} that nowhere.
nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)	„ „	„	
nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),			that from no quarter.
nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando),			that at no time.

Caesārem complexus obsecrāre coepit ne quid grāvius in fratrem stātueret, *Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes.

Circumspectans necunde impētus in frūmentātōres fiēret, *Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut voluptas non sit summum bonum, *From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Demosthēnes perfecit mēditando, ut nēmo plānius eo locūtus putārētur, *By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety* *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it will *not* occur: as,

Timēbam ne evēnīrent ea quae accīdērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

Timor Rōmae grandis fuit, ne iterum Galli Rōmam rēdīrent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

Pater terruit gentes grāve ne rēdīret sēcūlum Pyrrhae, *The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

Omnes labōres te excipere video; timeo ut sustineas, *I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non*; especially in negative sentences: as,

Timeo ne non impetrem, *I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

Non vereor ne tua virtus opinioni hōmīnum non respondeat, *I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quin*, *that not*, *so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

- (1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: as, *Non prōhibeo*, *I do not prevent*; *Non rētineo*, *I do not restrain*; *Non rēpugno*, *I do not object*; and the like.
- (2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dūbium*, *There is no doubt*; *Quis dūbitat*, *Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest*, *It cannot be*; *Nēgāri non potest*, *It cannot be denied*; and the like.
- (3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

Obs. Under *negative sentences* are included those *virtually so*; as when *quis* expects the answer *No*: also those containing such words as *vix*, *scarcely*; *pārum*, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non possūmus, quin ālii a nōbis dissentiant, rēcūsāre*, *We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic

Vix me contineo quin in illum invōlem, *I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

Haud multum absuit quin Ismēnias interficērētur, *A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.*—Liv.

Obs. The expressions *haud multum absuit*, *minimūm absuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dūbium quin Helvētīi plūrimum possent*, *There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes.

Haud dūbia res vīsa quin circumducēret agmen, *There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv.

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignōrat quin tria Graecōrum gēnēra sint, *Who knows not (i. e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks?*—

Cic.: where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignōrat tria . . . esse* (§ 507).

(3.) *Equidem nunquam dōmum mīsi ūnam ēpistōlam, quin esset ad altēra*, *In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.*—Cic.

Nullus fēre dies est quin Satrius meam dōmum ventitet, *There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic.

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*quī nō*); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin īgītur expergiscīmīni? *Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall
Quin conscendīmus ēquos? *Why not to horse at once?*—Liv.

Obs. *Quin* with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,
Quin tu hoc audi, *Nay but do you hear me?*—Ter.

§ 463. *Quōmīnus, that not, so that not*, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance*; as, *impēdio, I impede*; *prōhībeo, I prevent*; *offīcio, I obstruct*, etc.; also after *per me stat, fit, it is owing to me* (that something does not take place): as,

Non rēcūsābo quomīnus omnes mea scripta lēgant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.—Cic.

Caesar cognōvit per Afrānium stāre quomīnus dimīcārētur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.—Caes.

5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Oratio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem se ad dēlibērandum sumptūrum (esse), Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take a day to consider.—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: *Diem ego ad dēlibērandum sūmām, I will take a day to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

- (A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.
- (B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.
- (C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.
- (D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.
- (E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit, he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis se obsīdes reddītūrum non esse, Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātos mittit, "velle se de his rebus agere cum eo," Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.—Caes.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua* : as,

Caesar lēgātos cum his mandātis mittit, .. haec esse quae ab eo postulāret, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.—Caes.*

(Direct form : Haec sunt quae a te postulo.)

Apud Hypānim flūvium Aristōtēles ait, bestiōlas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.—Cic.*

(Direct form : Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative : as,

Quis pōtest esse tam āversus a vērō, qui nēget haec omnia, quae vīdemus, deōrum immortalium pōtestāte administrāri, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods ?—Cic.*

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood ; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434) : as,

Fūrēre omnes tribūni plēbis .. "quidnam id rei esset?" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"—Liv.*

(Direct question : Quidnam id rei est?)

Quid de praedā faciendum censērent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?—Liv.*

(Direct question : Quid de praedā faciendum censetis?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive : as,

"Si vētēris contāmēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum mēmōriam depōnere posse?" *"Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?"—Caes.*

(Here, num depōnere posse = non depōnere posse.)

Interrōgābat .. "quando ausūros exposcere rēmēdia, nisi .. etc." *He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?"—Tac.*

(Quando ausuros = nunquam ausuros.)

An quicquam esse sūperbiū ? *Could anything be more arrogant ?—Liv.*

(An quicquam esse = nihil esse.)

§ 470. (D.) *Commands* and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *imperāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451):

as,
(Orāre) ..ferrent opem, *adjūvarent*, (*He begged them, to come to his assistance and help.*—Liv.

“Sin bello persēqui persēvēraret, *rēmīniscērētur* pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,” “*If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them (he had him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*” —Caes.

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar respondit .. “nullos in Galliā vācāre agros, qui dāri tantae multitudīni *possint*,” *Caesar replied .. that “there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude.”*—Caes.

(Direct form: “Nulli in Galliā vacant agri, qui dari *possint* :” comp. § 480.)

“Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. qui inter quātuordēcim annos tectum non *sūbissent*, virtūte *possint*,” “*He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*”—Caes.

(Direct form also: “Qui *sūbissent* (§ 476) .. *possint*” (§ 434).

6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Haec qui videat, nonne cōgātur fātēri deos esse, Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?—Cic.

(*Qui videat* = *si quis videat, if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persārum pōtest esse, qui non ante Magōrum disciplinam percēpērit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.—Cic.

(*Qui non perceperit* = *nisi perceperit, unless he has learned.*)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase *quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortunāte adōlescens, qui tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris, O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.—Cic.

Ut cubitum discessimus, me et de viâ et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, arctior quam solēbat somnus complexus est, *No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.*—Cic.

(*Qui vigilassem = quum vigilassem*, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of *qui* as introducing a reason is augmented by *ut*, *utpöte*, *quippe*: as,

Magna pars Fidēnātium, *ut qui cölōni additi Römānis essent*, Lätine sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv.

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Caesar, *quippe qui ab eo in me esset incensus*, *Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).*—Cic.

Obs. But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative: as,

Anīmus fortunā non ēget, *quippe quae pröbitātem . . . nēque däre neque ēripere pötest*, *The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.*—Sall.

§ 478. *Qui* of *Purpose*.—*Qui* takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of *ut*, and denotes a *Purpose* (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui ēripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, *There are many who take from one to bestow on another.*—Cic.

(*Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.*)

Clusīni lēgātos Römam qui auxiliū a sēnātu pētērent, misēre, *The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.*—Liv.

(*Qui peterent = ut peterent.*)

§ 479. *Qui* of *Result*.—*Qui* is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of *ut* as indicating a *Result* (§ 449): as,

In enödandis nōmīnibus, *quod misērandum sit*, lābörātis, *In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.*—Cic.

(*Quod miserandum sit = ut miserandum sit.*)

Mājus gaudium fuit quam quod unīversum hōmīnes cāpērent, *The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.*—Liv.

(*Major quam quod caperent = major quam ut caperent.*)

§ 480. *Qui* is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, idōneus, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of* or *fit for*: as,

Liviānae fābūlae non sātis dignae sunt quas Itērum lēgantur, *The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic.

Nulla mihi vidēbātur aptior persōna quae de sēnectūte loquērētur, quam Cātōnis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic.

Hōmīnes scēlērāti indigni mihi vidēbantur, quōrum causam agērem, *The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.*—Cic.

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition: as,

Primi qua mōdo praeirent dūces, signa sēquēbantur, The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.—Liv.

Alii ubi semel prōcūbissent, inter jūmenta mōriētes, Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.—Liv.

Obs. But the Indicative may also be used: as, *consul, quācumque in parte libōrāre senserat suos, impigre fērebat ōpem.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as *sunt qui, there are some who*; *non dēsunt qui, there are not wanting men who*; *rēpēriuntur, there are found some who*: as,

Sunt qui discessum ānīmi a corpōre putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.

Fūere qui crēderent M. Crassum non ignārum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.

§ 483. *Quum*.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*); it may then generally be translated by *as, since, or although*: as,

Quum vīta sine āmicis insidiārum et mētūs plēna sit, rātio ipsa mōnet āmicitias comparāre, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.—Cic.

Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.—Nep.

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

Socrātes in pompā quum magna vis auri argentique ferrētur, quam multa non dēsidero! inquit, When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrātes, "How many things there are I don't want!"—Cic.

Quos quum tristiōres vidisset. trīginta mīnas accēpit, When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae.—Cic.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time at which something takes place: as,

Quum testes dābo ex Siciliā, quem vōlet ille ēligat, When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.—Cic.

§ 486. *Quod* (*quo*) and *quia*.—The Conjunctions *quod* and *quia*, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Ideircō sum tardior quod non invēnio fidum tābellārium, I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.

Urbs quae quia postrēma aedificāta est, Neapōlis (νεά πόλις) nōmīnātur, *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (Neiopolis).*—Cic.

Obs. Quia states a reason more directly and positively than quod.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with non quod, non quia, is used.

The difference between the use of quia or quod with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pugiles etiam quum feriunt adversarium ingemiscunt, non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed quia profundēdā voce omne corpus intenditur, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).*—Cic.

§ 489. Quod is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, jūvat, *it delights*; vitium est, *it is a fault*; laudābile est, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

Jūvat me, quod vident stūdia, prōferunt se ingenia hōmīnum, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.*—Plin. Ep.

Magnum bēnēficiū nātūrae est, quod necesse est mōri, *It is a great boon of nature that we must die.*—Sen.

§ 492. Quippe (quia-pe), because, as being, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, quum, quod, quia, quōniam, ubi, enim, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vērō laudo: .. quippe quia magnarum saepe id rēmediū aegritudinū est, *I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.*—Ter.

Lēve nōmen hābet utrāque res: quippe lēve enim est hoc tōtum, risum mōvēre, *Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.*—Cic.

§ 493. Quippe is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vētor fātis! *Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!*—Virg.

Mōvet me quippe lūmen cūriae! *Forsooth that luminary of the senate house disturbs me!*—Cic.

§ 494. Quōniam (*quum jam*), *since*, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

Quōniam res in id discrimen adducta est, *Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis*.—Cic.

De suis privātim rēbus ab eo pētēre coepērunt, quōniam civitāti consulēre non possent, *They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state*.—Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified themselves merely: v. § 487.)

Itaque quōniam ipse pro se dīcēre non posset, verba fēcit frāter ejus, *Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman*.—Nep.

§ 497. Dum, *whilst*, is construed with the Indicative; dum, *until*, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea rēdemptio mansit.....dum iudices rejecti sunt, *That bargain remained in forceuntil the judges were rejected*.—Cic.

Obsidio deinde per paucos dies māgis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus dūcis cūraretur, *The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured*.—Liv.

Irātis subtrāhendi sunt ii, in quos impētum facēre cōnantur, dum se ipsi colligant, *Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves*.—Cic.

§ 498. Dummōdo (also simply dum or modo), *provided that* (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Ōderint, dum mētuant, *Let them hate provided only they fear*.—Suet.

Omnia recta et hōnesta negligunt, dummōdo pōtēntiam consēquantur, *They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power*.—Cic.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, antēquam, priusquam, *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnibus nēgōtiis, priusquam aggrēdiāre, adhībenda est praepārātio diligens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation*.—Cic.

§ 501. When antēquam, priusquam, and postquam, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeo, de me pauca dicam, *Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself*.—Cic.

Non ante finitum est proelium, quam tribūnus militum *interfectus est*, *The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.*—Liv.

Ante āliquanto quam tu nātus es, *A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

Dēcessit post annum quartum quam expulsus ērat, *He died four years after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

Prius Placentiam pervēnere quam sātis scīret Hannibal ab Ticīno profectos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Sālāmīna, quae facta est prius quam poenā liberārētur, *He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

§ 502. *Quamvis*, *however much*, and *licet*, *although*, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

Quamvis Elysios mīrētur Graecia campos, *However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg.

Quamvis sit magna (expectatio), tāmen eam vinces, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic.

Licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frēquenter tāmen causa virtutum est, *Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint.

Vita brēvis est *licet* supra mille annos exeat, *Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen.

§ 503. *Quamquam*, *etsi*, *ētiamsi*, *although*, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): as,

Quamquam,—*etsi* priore foedere stārētur,—sātis cautum ērat de Saguntinis, *Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv.

Quamquam festinas, non est mōra longa, *Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.*—Hor.

Sed *quamquam* nēgent, nec virtutes nec vitia crescēre, attāmen, etc., *But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.*—Cic.

CHAPTER XLVI.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvat*, *dēlectat*, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum*, *dēcōrum est*, (*it*) *is fine, becoming, &c.*: as,

Jūvat integros accōdēre fontes, atque haurire, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.—Lucr.

(Here *accōdēre*, *haurire*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

At *pulchrum est digito monstrāri, et dici*, “*hic est*,” *But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, “There he is!”*—Pers.

2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare, and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

Quid sit fūturum cras fūge quærere, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.—Hor.

Pro nobis mitte prēcāri, Give over praying for us!—Ov.

3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

Thāles Milēsius aquam dixit esse ĩnĭtium rērum, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.—Cic.

Sentit ānĭmus se mōvērĭ, The soul is conscious that it moves.—Cic.

Non ěnim ambrōsiā deos aut nectāre laetārĭ arbĭtror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.—Cic.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder, etc.*, may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Salvum te advēnĭre gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.—Plaut.

Īnfērĭōres non dōlĕre (dēbent) se a suis sūpĕrārĭ, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.—Cic.

Miror te ad me nihil scribere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.—Cic.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, *it is certain*; *mānĭfestum est*, *it is manifest*; *aequum, justum est*, *it is fair or just*; *ōpus, nēcesse, est*, *it is necessary*; *sēqūitur*, *it follows*; *constat*, *it is acknowledged*; *expĕdit*, *it is expedient*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Certum est libĕros a pārentibus āmārĭ, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.—Quint.

Quae libèrum scire æquum est ad̄lescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.—Ter.

Constat ad salùtem civium inventas esse lēges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.—Cic.

Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab impēritis tēneātur, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.—Cic.

Obs. Restat, reliquum est, it remains; proximum est, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, sequitur, it follows; expedit, it is expedient; mos (moris) est, it is a custom, are often followed by ut and the Subjunctive: as,

Proximum est ut doceam deōrum providentiā mundum administrāri, The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.—Cic.

Si hæc enuntiatio v̄ra non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness*, or *permission* (including *jubeo*), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Mājores corpōra jūvenum firmāri labōre voluerunt, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.—Cic.

Sēnātui placet, Crassum Sȳriam obtinere, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.—Cic.

Verres hōminem corrip̄i jussit, Verres ordered the man to be arrested.—Cic. (comp. § 451).

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, I desire that I may be merciful.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Verbs of *wishing* are in many cases followed by ut and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, sqq.).

Obs. 2. *Imp̄ro* is sometimes used like *jūbeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Has omnes actuārias imp̄erat fieri, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.—Caes.

4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination*, *ability*, *lawfulness*, *duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative: as,

Studeo ex te audire quid sentias, I desire to hear from you what you think.—Cic.

Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest, Friendship can only exist between the good.—Cic.

Optat arare caballus, The nag would like to draw the plough.—Hor (cf. § 447).

Dici beatus ante obitum nemo debet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.—Ov.

Caesar bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit, Cuesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.—Caes.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

Ubi völes päter esse, Ibi esto, *When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

Cüpio in tantis reipublicæ përicülis, me non dissolütum vïdëri, *I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lux.*—Cic.

Licuit esse ötiöso Themistocli, *Themistocles might have been inactive*—Cic.

Obs. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, *I wished to have been consul*, is *Volui me consulem esse*, not *fuisse*: see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying to begin, continue, or leave off; also to be or become accustomed, govern the Infinitive: as,

Incipe, parve puer, mätrem cognoscëre risu, *Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*—Virg.

Illud jam miräri dësino, *That I am now ceasing to wonder at.*—Cic.

5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mëne dësistëre victam, *(To think that) I should give over as vanquished!*—Virg.

6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intëreä Manlius in Etrüriä plëbem sollicitäre, *Meantime Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque mëtu përicüla mëtiri, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find *före ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Clämäbant hömïnes, *före ut ipsi se dii immortäles ulciscërentur*, *The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.*—Cic.

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero *före ut contingat* id nobis, *I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

CHAPTER XLVII.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsoris, candenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

Ipsa suā Dido conedit ūsa mānu, Dido fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.—Ov.

Puer bene sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.—Cic.

Obs. When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity for*, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

Obs. 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which form a *Perfect* Participle Active: as, *ādeptus, having acquired*; *ūsus, having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

Obs. 2. The lack of an *Imperfect* Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

Multi in equis parandis adhibent cūram, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt, Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.—Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as *going on* at the time spoken of: as,

Curio ad focum sedenti magnum auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati sunt, When the Samnites brought Curius as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected. Cic.

Scripta tua jam diu expectans non audeo tamen flagitare, While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the *Imperfect* Participle, *quum* with the *Past-Imperfect* is often used: as,

Audivi quum diceret, I heard him saying.—Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense :—

Audeo,	<i>I dare,</i>	ausus,	<i>having dared.</i>
Gaudeo,	<i>I rejoice,</i>	gāvīsus,	<i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i>
Sōleo,	<i>I am wont,</i>	sōlītus,	<i>having been wont.</i>
Fido (& comp.),	<i>I trust,</i>	fīsus,	<i>having trusted.</i>
Jūro,	<i>I swear,</i>	jūrātus,	<i>having sworn.</i>
Coeno,	<i>I dine,</i>	coenātus,	<i>having dined.</i>
Prandeo,	<i>I breakfast,</i>	pransus,	<i>having breakfasted.</i>
Nūbo,	<i>I am married,</i>	nupta,	<i>having married.</i>
Ōdi,	<i>I hate,</i>	ōsus	<i>having hated, hating.</i>

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense : the following are among the principal ones that do so :—

Adīpīscor,	<i>I attain to,</i>	ādēptus,	<i>having attained, or having been attained.</i>
Cōmītor,	<i>I accompany,</i>	cōmītātus, &c.	
Confīteor,	<i>I confess,</i>	confessus, &c.	
Mētior,	<i>I measure,</i>	mensus.	
Expērior,	<i>I try,</i>	expertus.	
Mēdītor,	<i>I practise,</i>	mēdītātus.	
Testor,	<i>I call to witness,</i>	testātus.	
Mōdēror,	<i>I control,</i>	mōdērātus.	
Pōpūlor,	<i>I devastate,</i>	pōpūlātus.	
Partior,	<i>I divide,</i>	partitus.	
Pācīscor,	<i>I bargain,</i>	pactus.	

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways :

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Cognīto Caesāris adventu, Ariovīstus lēgātōs ad eum mittit, Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.

Dextrā Hercūles datā ōmen se accīpere ait, Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.—Liv.

(B.)

Epāminōndas quum vicisset Lācēdaemōnīos apud Mantīnēam, atque ipse grāvi vulnēre se exānīmārī vīdēret, quaesīvit, salvusne esse clipeus, Epāminōndas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle Active* is used to denote (1) *simple futurity*; (2) *intention or purpose*: as,

Delli mōrītūre, *O Dellius, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.

Perseus rēdiit, belli cāsūm de integro tentātūrus, *Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

Obs. The *Future Participle* occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The *Neuter of the Perfect Participle* is sometimes used as an *Abstract Substantive*: as,

Nam priusquam incīpias, *consulto*; et ubi consūlueris, mātūre factō ōpus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall.

Nihil pensī neque mōdērātī hābēre, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of *Conjunctions* where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

Victa pietas jācet, *Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.*—Ov.

Rursus in obliquū verso perrumpit arātro, *Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.*—Virg.

Tyrtæus carmīna compōsita exercitūi rēcītāvit, *Tyrtæus composed songs and repeated them to the army.*—Justin.

CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The *Gerund* is a *Verbal Substantive* used in all cases except the *Nominative* and *Vocative*: as, rēgendi, *of ruling*; rēgendo, *to, for, or by ruling*; ad rēgendum, *for the purpose of ruling*.

Obs. Instead of a *Nominative Case* of the *Gerund*, the *Infinitive Mood* is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The *Cases of Gerunds* have the same construction as the corresponding *Cases of ordinary Substantives*: as,

Gen.—Omnis lōquendi (§ 263) ēlēgantia expōlitur scientiā litērārum, *Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature.*—Cic.

Dat.—Aqua nitrōsa ūtilis est bibendo (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking.*—Plin.

Acc.—Brēve tempus aetātis sātis longum est ad bōne hōnestēque vivendum (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.*—Cic.

Abl.—Orātor in *dicendo* (§ 331) exercitātus, *An orator practised in speaking.*—Cic.

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions: otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

§ 533. The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

Parsimōnia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuos, aut ars re familiāri modērate utendi, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation.*—Sen.

Diogēnes dicēbat, artem se tradere vēra ac falsa dijūdicandi, *Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.*—Cic.

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is *necessary* or *proper* to be done. It is always *Passive* in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly *Passive* or from a *Deponent*. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the *Nominative Case* along with the Verb *est, sunt, etc.*, in agreement with a *Substantive*, to signify that something *ought to be done*.

(B.) It is used (*impersonally*) in the *Neuter Gender* along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all *Cases* except the *Nominative* or *Vocative*, in agreement with a *Substantive*, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the *Accusative*.—NOTE. *The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb governs an *Accusative*, the *Gerundive* agrees with the *Nominative* of its substantive: as,

Diligentia est cōlenda, *We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

Obs. Such a construction as poenas timendum est, *we must fear punishment* (Lucretius), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb governs any other case than the *Accusative* the *Gerundive* is used *impersonally* with *est* in the *Nominative Singular Neuter*: as,

Resistendum senectūti est, *We must resist old-age.*—Cic.

Corpōri subveniendum est, *We must aid the body.*—Cic.

Utendum erit verbis iis, quibus jam consuetudo nostra non utitur, *We shall have to use words which our present usage does not employ.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the *Gerundive Participle* governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

Obs. 2. The *Dative* of the *Agent* is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus

Ars puēros ēdūcandi difficīlis est

becomes

Ars puērōrum ēdūcandōrum difficīlis est

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus*, *a*, *um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

Nihil Xenōphonti tam rēgāle vīdētur, quam stūdiū agri cōlendi, *Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.*—Cic.

Rēgūlus rētīnēndi officīi causā crūciātum sūbiit vōluntāriū, *Regulus for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.*—Cic.

Obs. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a *neuter* Adjective: as,

(Pars hōnesti) in trībuēdo suū cuique versātur, *A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

Vālērīus consul cōmītia collēgæ subrōgādo hābuit, *Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

Dēcēmvīri lēgībūs scribūndis, *Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

CHAPTER XLIX.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *u* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a *Purpose*. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Fābīus Pictor Delphos ad ōrācūlum missus est scītātum quībus prō

etibus deos possent placāre, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

Cūbitum ire (or, of several persons, *cūbitum discēdere*), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos *hābitātum concessit*, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of Manner, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jūcundus*, *pleasant*; *fācilis*, *easy*; *hōnestus*, *honourable*; *crēdibilis*, *credible*; *mīrābilis*, *wonderful*; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in what respect they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam jūcundum cognītu atque auditu, quam sāpientibus sententiis grāvibusque verbis ornāta ōrātiō? What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?—Cic.

Id dictu quam re fācilius, That were easier in the saying than in the doing.—Liv.

Nēfas est dictu, There were an impiety in so saying!—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pūdet*: as,

Pūdet dictu, I am ashamed as I say it!—Agr. 32.

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,

Mīrābile dictu, Marvellous to relate!—Virg.



PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

Obs. *Prosody* is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

CHAPTER L.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The *Quantity* of a Syllable is either long (—), short (˘), or doubtful (≅).

(A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long : as, āurum, *gold*, pōēna, *punishment*, cūī, *to whom*.

EXCEPTION.—Præ in composition is usually short before a vowel : as, præ-acutus, *sharpened at the end*.

Obs. 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long : as, oc-cīdo, *to kill*, from caedo, *to strike* ; con-clūdo, *to shut up*, from claudio, *to shut*.

Obs. 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened : as, pōēsis (ποίησις), *μῦθε* (πλατεία) as well as platēa.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long : as, cōgo from cōāgo, *to collect*, bōbus from bōvibus, *to or by oxen*, jūnior from jūvēnior, *younger*, prūdēns from prōvīdēns, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x, z*), or by *j* : as, mēnsa, *a table*, dūx, *a leader*, Amāzon, *an Amazon*, ējus, *of him*.

Obs. In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word nūx (*a nut*), root nūc-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position) : though strictly speaking, it is the syllable which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *s*, the vowel retaining its quantity as in other cases ; nūc-i, nūc-em, nūc-es, etc.

EXCEPTION 1. *Bijugus, yoked two together, quadrijugus, yoked four together.*

Obs. 1. Qu is a single consonant: hence, *ăqua, water. H* is a simple breathing: hence, *ădhuc, as yet.*

Obs. 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word and another consonant begins the next word: as, *In mare, into the sea, fruitŭr vita, he enjoys life.*

Obs. 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel usually remains short: as,

In solio Phoebus claris lucēntē smāragdis.—Ov.

Obs. 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before sc, sm, sp, sq, and st.

EXCEPTION 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, *dŭplex* or *dŭplex, twofold, pātris* or *pātris, of a father.* It generally remains short before *tl, us, Ătlas; cl, as assĕcla; and fl, as mellifluus, flowing-with-honey.*

Obs. 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids m or n: as, *Tĕcmessa* or *Tĕcmessa, Prŏcne* (or *Prŏgne*), *eŷenus* (or *eŷgnus*), *a swan.*

Obs. 2. A vowel naturally long remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, *ăeres* from *ăcer, sharp.*

Obs. 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, *ŏb-ruo, not ŏb-ruo, to overwhelm, sŭb-latum, not sŭb-latum, lifted up.*

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, *pŭs, pious, flĕo, to weep, pŭer, a boy:* or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as *trăho, věho.*

EXCEPTIONS. The following vowels are long before another vowel.

1. The *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, *aquăi.*
2. The *a* and *e* of proper names in *-aius, -eius:* as, *Căius, Pompĕius* (*Căjus, Pompĕjus*).
3. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, *diĕi:* but *rĕi* and *fidĕi* except in archaic poets.
4. The *e* in the Interjection *ĕheu.*
5. The *i* in the Genitive *alius* (but always short in *alterius*). In the other Genitives in *ius*, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, *illius, ipsius, unius.*
6. The *i* in *ŷio* when not followed by *r:* as, *ŷio, ŷiebam, ŷiam, but ŷierem, ŷieri.*
7. The *i* in *dĭa* (*δĭα*), *divine.*
8. The *i* in *Diana* is doubtful: *Dĭana* and *Dĭana.*
9. The *o* in the Interjection *ohe* is doubtful: *ŏhe* and *ŏhe.*
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, *ăĕr* (*ἄήρ*), *Aenĕas* (*Αἰνέας*), *Alexandria* (*Ἀλεξάνδρεια*) *Briŷĭa* (*Βρισηΐς*).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels*.—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, *lēvis*, *light*, *lēvis*, *smooth*, *lēgo*, *I pick*, *read*, *lēgo*, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, *dūco*, *I lead*, root *dūc* (compare *dux*, *dūcis*: *ēdūco*, *I educate*); *dīco*, *I say*, root *dīc* (compare *index*, *-dīcis*, *mālēdīcus*, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are *short*: as, *rēgīfūgium* (name of a festival), *rēgīficus*, *kingly* (*rex*, *fūgo*, *fācio*); *ōpīfēr*, *aid-bringing* (*ops*, *fēro*); *lāniger*, *wool-bearing* (*lāna*, *gēro*); *magnīloquus*, *grandly speaking* (*magnus*, *loquor*), etc.

Obs. In *levāmentum*, *instrūmentum*, *lenīmentum*, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as, *gēr-ēbam*, *gēr-ens*, *lānī-gēr*, from *gēr-o*.
rēg-ius, *rēg-īna*, *rēg-ī-fūgium*, from *rex*, *rēg-is*.

EXCEPTIONS: <i>cūrūlis</i> (<i>sella</i>),	<i>the curule chair</i> , from <i>currus</i> .
<i>tēgūla</i> ,	<i>a tile</i> , " <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>sēdes</i> ,	<i>a seat</i> , " <i>sēd-co</i> .
<i>lūcerna</i> ,	<i>a lantern</i> , " <i>lūc-co</i> .
<i>sēcūs</i> ,	<i>otherwise</i> , " <i>sēcūs</i> .
<i>prōnūba</i> ,	<i>match-maker</i> , " <i>nūbo</i> .
<i>jūcundus</i> ,	<i>pleasant</i> , " <i>jūvo</i> .
<i>hūmānus</i> ,	<i>human</i> , " <i>hōmo</i> .
<i>sōpor</i> ,	<i>sleep</i> , " <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>pējēro</i> and <i>dējēro</i> ,	compounds of <i>jūro</i> .

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, *index*, *-dīcis*, *an informer*; *praedīco*, *I affirm*; *mālēdīcus*, *evil-speaking* (all with *i short*), compared with *dīco*, *I say*, *addīco*, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root *dīc*, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of *dīco*, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In *cognitum*, *agnitum* (from *nōtum*), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare *cāpio*, *accīpio*, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

<i>lāvo</i> ,	<i>lāvi</i> ,	<i>lōtum</i> ,	<i>to wash</i> .
<i>vīdeo</i> ,	<i>vīdi</i> ,	<i>vīsum</i> ,	<i>to see</i> .
<i>mōveo</i> ,	<i>mōvi</i> ,	<i>mōtum</i> ,	<i>to move</i> .
<i>jūvo</i> ,	<i>jūvi</i> ,	<i>jūtum</i> ,	<i>to assist</i> .

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, *rūi*.

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bibi, dēdi, fūi, tūli.
Stēti, stīti, fīdi, scīdi.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short ;

Datum, rātum, sātum, rūtum,
Ītum, cītum, lītum, sītum (quītum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From *sto* comes *stātum* : from *sisto* comes *stātum*.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated perfect is short : as *pōposci* from *posco*, *to demand* ; *tētīgi* from *tango*, *to touch* ; *cēcīdi* from *caedo*, *to cut*.

§ 737. The prefix *pro* is short in *prōcella*, *a storm*, *prōcul*, *far off*, *prōfanus*, *profane*, *prōfestus*, *not kept as a holiday*, *prōficiscor*, *to set out*, *prōfecto*, *truly*, *prōfiteor*, *to profess*, *prōfugio*, *to flee to a distance*, *prōfundus*, *deep*, *prōfundo*, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e. g.* : “*Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore vōces*,” *Cat.*), *prōnepos*, *great-grandson* (but *prōnepos* once in *Sidonius*), *prōpitius*, *propitious*, *prōtervus*, *wanton* : it is doubtful in *prōcuro*, *to manage another's affairs* *prōpago*, *layer, offspring*, *prōpago*, *to propagate*, *prōpino*, *to drink to another*, *prōpello*, *to push forward* (*ō* in *Lucr.* only) : it is long in all other words : as, *prōcedo*, *to go forward*, *prōcurro*, *to run forward*, &c.

Obs. *Prōpago*, in sense of *layer* ; *prōpago*, *offspring* (*Virg.*).

§ 738. *Di* is short only in *dīrimo* (*disimo*), *to separate*. and *dīsertus*, *eloquent*.

§ 739. *Ne* is short only in *nēque*, *neither* ; *nēqueo*, *to be unable* ; *nēfas* (and its derivatives), *unlawful* : *nēfandus*, *abominable* ; long in other words, as *nēmo* (*ne-hemo* or *homo*), *no one*.

§ 740. *O* for *ob* is short in *ōmitto*, *to let go by*, and *ōperio*, *to shut up*.

§ 741. *Si* is short in *sīquidem*.

§ 742. *Re* is always short, except *rēfert* (= *rem fert*), *it concerns* (but *rēfert* from *rēfero*).

§ 743. *Ve* is long, except in *vēhemens* (= *vē-mens*), *forcible*.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long : as, *sī*, *tū*, *tē*, *mē*, *sē*, *nē*, *ē*, *dē*.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *eē*, *tē* (*tutē*, *peē* (*reapsē*), *ptē* (*suoptē*) : *quā* (*usu. preceded by sī, num, etc.*) *Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from *quia*.

(B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. FINAL VOWELS.

§ 745. *a* is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension . as, mensā.
 2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in as and es (excepting tes) : as, Aeneā, Anchisā.
- Obs.* But those in *es* (excepting *tes*) more frequently make ē : see § 746, 2.
3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation . as, amā.
 4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals : as, ā (āb), contrā, suprā; anteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph : 4.)

a is short :

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā.
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in tes, as Orestā.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters : as, regnā, mariā, cornuā.
4. In the Adverbs ită, posteă, the Conjunction quiă, and the Interjection ejă.

Obs. *a* in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in *eus* is doubtful : as Theseă.§ 746. *e* is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension : as, diē : and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative : as, fidē (= fidēi).
2. In Greek words in *e* of the First Declension : as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted : as, Tempō, oetō.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation: as, monē. But the following are doubtful: vidē, valē, cavē; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), habē, tacē, manē, jubē.
4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension: as, doctē, aegrē: with the exception of benē, malē, supernē, infernē (in Lucr. and Auson.), internē.
5. In the Adverbs ferē, fermē, and the Interjection ohē.

Obs. Concerning monosyllables in e, see § 744.

e is *short* in all other words: as, dominē, regē (subs. and verb), fuerē.

§ 747. i is generally *long*: as, puerī, corporī, dieī, audī, docuistī, vigintī.

i is *short*:

1. In nisi, quasi, sicubi, necubi, and in the very rare form cūi for cūi.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, Dat. Paridī, Voc. Alexī.

i is *doubtful* in mihī, tibī, sibī, ibī, ubī.

Obs. utique always; but always ibidem, ubique. We find also cūique.

§ 748. o is mostly common: as, amō, amatō, leō, octō.

But o is *long*:

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension: as, dominō, deō, magnō.
2. When it represents the Greek ω: as, Didō, Plutō.
3. In monosyllables: as, dō, prō.

o is *short* in egō, duō, modō, *only*, putō, *I think*, and cedō, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), nesciō, *I know not* (in the phrase nesciō quis), and quando when compounded with quidem: as, quandōquidem.

§ 749. u is always *long*: as, cornū, auditū.

II. FINAL CONSONANTS.

§ 750. *as* is almost always *long*: *as*, *mensās*, *civitās*, *laudās*.

as is *short* only:

1. In *anās*, *anātis*, *a duck*.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: *as*, *Arcadās*. And some Greek Noms. *as Iliās*, &c.

Obs. In *vas* (*vādis*) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. *es* is almost always *long*: *as*, *vulpēs*, *a fox*, *leonēs*.

es is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: *as*, *milēs*, *ītis*, *interpřēs*, *ētis*: and *adj.* *praepēs*, *ētis*; but *mercēs*, *ēdis*; *pēs*, *pēdis*; *abiēs*, *abiētis*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: *as*, *Arcadēs*: also *Hippomanēs* (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*), *Demosthenēs* (*Voc. Sing.*).
3. From *esse*, *to be*; *as*, *es*, *adēs*, *potēs*.
4. In the Preposition *penēs*.

§ 752. *is* is usually *short*: *as*, *navīs*, *lapidīs*, *regis*, *regerīs*.

But *is* is *long*:

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: *as*, *musīs*, *dominīs* (contr. from *musa* + *is*, *domino* + *is*: see §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), *nobīs*, *vobīs*.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for *es*); *as*, *omnīs* (or *omneis*) for *omnēs*.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: *as*, *audīs* (= *audi* + *is*: see § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*; *sīs*, *possīs*.

Obs. 1. In Fut. Perf. Indicative, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, *as fuerīs*.

Obs. 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: *as*, *vīs* (noun and verb), *glīs*: but *is*, *quīs* (prons.), are short.

§ 753. **os** is almost always *long*: as, puerōs, honōs (ōris), arbōs (ōris). (But arbōr, honōr, etc.: see § 760.)

os is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, avōs servōs (= avus, servus): see § 19. *Obs.*
2. In impōs (ōtis), compōs (ōtis).
3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidōs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argōs (neut.): besides ōs, oſsis, already mentioned.

§ 754. **us** is usually *short*: as, dominūs, gradūs, sumūs.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecūs, pecūdis.
2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypūs, Oedipūs, from ποῦς.

§ 755. **ys** in some Greek words is *long*: as Phorcēs, Erinnyēs: in Tethys it is common (Tethyēs).

§ 756. Final syllables in **b, d, t** are short; as, āb, apūd, amāt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in **t**; as, irritāt for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. **c**. Final syllables in **c** are mostly short: as, nēc, donēc.

EXCEPTIONS. Iāc, *milk*; hīc (adv.), *here* (the pronoun hīc is doubtful); hūc, *hither*; sic, *thus*: the Imperatives dīc, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce). Fāc is short (for faciē).

§ 758. **l**. Final syllables in **l** are short: as, semël, animāl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nīl.

§ 759. **n**. Final syllables in **n** are short: as, carmēn, tamēn, ān.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (*a kidney*), sīn (= *si non, but if not*), splēn (*the spleen*), ēn (*lo*), nōn (*not*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *a* and *es* (First Decl.): as Acneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Lacedaemōn Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. **r.** Final syllables in **r** are short: *as, puēr, vīr sempēr.*

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: *as, fūr (a thief), pār (subs. and adjct.), lār, vēr, cūr.* (But *cūr, the heart,* is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: *as, aēr (ἀήρ), the air; aethēr (αἰθήρ), the sky.*

N.B. *Celtibēr* is common. (Mart.)

CHAPTER LI.—METRE.

§ 761. **RHYTHM** (ῥέω, ῥυθμός) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quádrupĕ | dántĕ pū|trém sōnī|tū quātīt | úngŭlā | cámpūm.—Virg.

Pássēr | délīcī|^ˈae mē|^ˈae pu|^ˈéllae.—Catullus.

Flūmīnā | cōnstitē|rīnt ā|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called **Arsis** (ἄρσις, ictus), and is denoted by the sign [']. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, *vídīmus, áрма, tĕnŭia, dĕērat.* The unaccented syllable is called **Thesis** (θέσις), and is denoted by the sign [`]: as, *ármā.*

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, *Ítállam* (Virg. *Æn.* I. 2). The Grammarians call this **Diastō**.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called **feet** (pĕdēs): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second *five*; and the third *four*.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

- ~ ~ Pyrrhĭchius (Pyrrhic)... *pătĕr, bōnĕ.*
- ~ ˘ Iambus *ádĕst, mĕō.*
- ˘ ~ Trōchaeus (Trochee)... *ármā, flĕbīt.*
- Spondĕus (Spondee)..... *ōrās, ĕmī.*

2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

- ~ ~ ~ Tribráchys *hōmīnīs, rĕctĕpĕ.*
- ~ ~ ~ Dactŭlus (Dactyl).. *ōmnĭā, fĕctĭmŭs.*

— — —	Anapaestus (Anapaest) .	ābēō, lēgērēs.
— — —	Amphibrāchys	āmābāt, diēlūs.
— — —	Creticus or Amphimacer,	ēxplēō, sērūtūs.
— — —	Bacchīus	āmīcōs, sūpēllēx.
— — —	Antibacchīus	aūdīrē, rēxissē.
— — —	Molossus	haūsistī, dīvīnaē.

3. OF FOUR SYLLABLES.

— — —	Proceleusmaticus	īnītīā, cēlērītēr.
— — —	Ionicus a Minore	ōnērābūnt, gēnērōsī.
— — —	———— a Majore	ūlciscītūr, sōlāmīnē.
— — —	Choriambus	ērīpīunt, simplicitās.
— — —	Antispastus	īnēchaustūs, pērillūstrīs.
— — —	Paeon Primus	ēxīgūūs, rēspīcīt.
— — —	———— Secundus	ōbēdiēt, dōmēstīcūs.
— — —	———— Tertius	īnīmīcūs, pēpūlērē.
— — —	———— Quartus	īnītīō, mīserīcōrs.
— — —	Epitritus Primus	lābōrāndō, sālūtāntēs.
— — —	———— Secundus	ādmīnīstrāns, impērātrīx.
— — —	———— Tertius	āuctōrītās, intēllīgēns.
— — —	———— Quartus	āssērtātōr, īnfīnītūs.

Obs. Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Diiambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (μέτρα) which they contain.

Obs. A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one *measure*: an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a *half-measure*.

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (ἕξ, *six*); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (τρεις, *three*); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (δύς, *twice*).

§ 765. Elision (ēlisio) or synaephea (συναλοιφή) is the striking-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign \sim : as,

Cōntīcūērē omnes (read, cōntīcū|ēr'ōmn|ēs)

Mē mīserum ēxclāmāt (mē mīser|ēxclām|āt).

P̄erque h̄yēmēs (p̄erqu'h̄yē|mēs).

Ūmbrārūm haec sēdēs (ūmbrār'|h̄aec sēd|ēs).

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse : as,

Sī ad vitulam spectas.

Obs. 2. The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare : as.

intimō amore.

Obs. 3. The Elision of an iambus is avoided : as,

disce mēō exemplo.

Obs. 4. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of *est* is elided, and not the final vowel : thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided : as,

Ter sunt | conat|l im|ponere | Peliō | Ossam.—Virg.

Obs. 6. The Interjections *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, are not elided : as,

Ō pater | ō hōmīn|um di|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.
Āh ēgō | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Tib.

Obs. 7. Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel : as,

Te Cory|dōn, ō Āl|exi ; tra|hit sua | quemque vol|uptas.—Virg.
Īnsūlāe | Ion|io in mag|no quas | dira Ce|laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

Obs. 8. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s* : as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. *Synaerēsis* (συναίρεσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign \sim , \sim . It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse : as,

Si len|to fue|rint al|vēāria | vimine | texta.—Virg.

Caucasi|asque re|fert volu|eres fur|tumque Pro|methēi.—Virg.

So Orphēā, Typhoēā.

Synaerēsis is chiefly found in the following words :
dēinde, prōinde, abiēte, ariēte, dēesse and its derivatives,
antēhāc, and in the whole verb antēire.

§ 767. *Diaerēsis* (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables : as, pictai.

I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER METRE.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ($\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ($- \cup$), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ($- -$). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
$\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$	$\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$	$\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$	$\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$	$\overset{\prime}{-} \cup \cup$	$- \cup$
$\overset{\prime}{-} -$	$\overset{\prime}{-} -$	$\overset{\prime}{-} -$	$\overset{\prime}{-} -$	$\overset{\prime}{-} -$	$- -$

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four Dactyls.*

- (a) Rádit íter líquidúm cēlērēs nēquē commovet alas.

2. *One Spondee and Three Dactyls.*

- (b) Īmpēnsāquē súf pōtērít sup̄erare cruoris,
 (c) Tēmpōrā lābūntúr t̄acit̄isquē sēnescimus annis,
 (d) Nítimur ín vētítúm sēmp̄er cūpimusque negata,
 (e) Āspiciúnt ōcūl̄is sup̄er̄í mōrtalia justis;

3. *Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.*

- (f) Dúm virēs ānníquē s̄inunt̄ t̄ol̄erate labores,
 (g) Quārūm quāe mēdiā'st nōn ēst hābitabilis aestu,
 (h) Cúrvaríquē mánus̄ et̄ adūncōs crescer' in unguēs,
 (i) At̄ p̄at̄er̄ út̄ terrās m̄undúmquē r̄ubescere vidit,
 (k) Nūmīnā nēc sp̄ern̄í s̄inē poenā nostra sinamus,
 (l) Cōntiḡer̄ant̄ rāpidās lim̄ōsi Phasidos undas;

4. *Three Spondees and One Dactyl.*

- (m) Nātūram̄ exp̄ellās fūrcā tāmēn usque recurrēt,
 (n) Ūt̄ dēsint̄ virēs tāmēn ēst̄ laudanda voluntas,
 (o) Aut̄ pr̄odēssē v̄olunt̄ aut̄ dēlectare poetae,
 (p) Pártur̄iunt̄ mōntēs nāscēt̄ur̄ ridiculus mus;

5. *Four Spondees.*

- (q) Ēx̄ aequó capt̄is̄ ardēbānt̄ mentibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called *Spondaic*. It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constitit atque oculis Phrygia ægmīnā cīrcūmspexit:
 Cara deum soboles, magnūm Jōvis īnerēmētum:
 Cum patribus populoque, penātībūs ēt māgnis dis.

Obs Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,
 Aut levis ocreas lentō dūcūnt ārgento.—Virg. Aen. VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one *Caesura* (from *caedo*, “to cut”) which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five *Caesuras*:

Dōnec || eris || felix || multós || numerábis || amīcos.

§ 772. The *Caesura* may be either strong or weak. The *strong Caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

Ārma virūmque canó || Trojaé qui prímus ab óris.

The *weak Caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a *Dactyl*: as,

Ó passí gravióra || dabít deus hís quoque finem.

§ 773. The *Caesuras* are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (*ἡμι-* and *μέρος*): hence, *Triemimeral*, after the first three half feet; *Penthemimeral*, after the first five half feet; *Hepthemimeral*, after the first seven half feet; *Ennehemimeral*, after the first nine half feet.

Obs. The two short syllables of the *Dactyl* are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral*, or *Hepthemimeral* *Caesura*. The *Penthemimeral strong Caesura* is the most common. The *Hepthemimeral* is generally used along with the *Triemimeral*: as,

Fāma malúm || quo nón aliúd || velócius úllum.

§ 775. Besides the *Pause* of the *Caesura*, a *Hexameter* usually has another *pause*, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two *pauses* in addition to the *Penthemimeral Caesura*: as,

Tántae | mólis erát || Románam | cōdere géntem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cŷpǎ | rissī); Bucol. 8, 1 (Alphĕšī | boei); etc.

Obs. 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as *laus ĕst* (Hor.), *usa ĕst* (Virg.), are admissible.

Obs. 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

Vĕrtitur Intereá coelum, ĕt ruit Ōceanó Nóx (Virg.).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter entirely dactyls or entirely spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

Quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula cámpum.
Ílli intér sesé magná vi bráchia tóllunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter*.—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis arbütüs hörrída,
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.

Jamque iter emensi turres ac tĕctá Lätinórum
Ardua cernebant, &c.—Virg.

Obs. In Virgil, the redundant syllable is in most cases the enclitic -que

II. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

Póstera lúx oritúr. Línguís animísque favéte,
Núnc dicénda boná || súnť bona verba dié.—Ov.

It has the following scheme:

— — — | — — — | — || — — — | — — — | —

Hence it appears :

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire feet*, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half foot*, consisting of a monosyllable. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$. Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

Obs. The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant : as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuit.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties :

1. Two Dactyls : as,
Crédídímús gēnērí || nómínibúsque tuís :
2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl : as,
Trájectám gládíó || mórte períre juvát :
Cúm málá pér lóngás || cónvaluére morás : (most usual form) :
3. Two spondees : as,
Súprēmám bēllís || ímposuísse manúm.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse :

- (1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

Obs. But Catullus, Propertius, and others employ quadrisyllabic, and, *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

- (2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

- (3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

Obs. The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

III. TRIMETER IAMBIC (ACATALECTIC) VERSE.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (*διποδία ιαμβικάι*), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1 2 3 4 5 6
 — ′ | — ′ | — || ′ | — ′ | — ′ | — ′ |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the *odd* places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mētús pavórquē || fúnus ét frëndéns dolór,
 Prōnást tímórī || sémpér ín pējús fidēs.

Obs. A Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταλήγω*, to leave off), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

- (A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.
 (B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.
 (C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae poénā mānēat mémet ét sedés scío;
 Hic laéva frónis dóctā mōdērandís manus;
 Pyrrhí manú mactētur ét tūmúlum riget,
 Tu tú malórum máchinátrix fáctinorum;
 An āllíqua poénae párs meae ígnotást mihi,
 Lācēraeve fíxis únguibus venaé fluant,
 Quin pōtíus íra cóncitúm pectús doma;
 Fas ómne cédāt ābēat éxpulsús pudor,
 Evásit ét pēnētrále fúnestum áttigit,
 Parum ípse fidēs míhímet ín tutó tua.

APPENDIX I.—THE CALENDAR.

§ 922 The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quinctilis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

- (1). *Kālendae, arum*; *the Kalends*: being the 1st day of the month.
- (2). *Nōnae, arum*; the Nones: being either the 5th or 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.*
- (3). *Idūs, uum (f.)*; *the Ides*; being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

“ In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day.”

Consequently in the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its “*Kalends*,” the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (*prīdie Kāendas*). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*: often written *prīdie Kal. Jan.* Then the day before that is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

1. KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.	17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18. XV. ”
3. III. ” ”	19. XIV. ” ”
4. Prīdie Nonas Decembres.	20. XIII. ” ”
5. NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.	21. XII. ” ”
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22. XI. ” ”
7. VII. ” ”	23. X. ” ”
8. VI. ” ”	24. IX. ” ”
9. V. ” ”	25. VIII. ” ”
10. IV. ” ”	26. VII. ” ”
11. III. ” ”	27. VI. ” ”
12. Prīdie Idus Decembres.	28. V. ” ”
13. IDIBUS DECEMBRIBUS.	29. IV. ” ”
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30. III. ” ”
15. XVIII. ” ”	31. Prīdie ” ”
16. XVII. ” ”	

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them.

Obs. Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both die and ante were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with ante, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under its government: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Muias, usually written a. d. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by ante.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante dies octāvum et septimum Kāendas Octōbres cōmītiis dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres. *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Calendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (*bis-sextus*). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as prior and posterior.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—

§ 928. CALENDARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.
2.	VI.	IV.	IV.	IV.
3.	V.	III.	III.	III.
4.	IV.	ante Nonas.	ante Nonas.	ante Nonas.
5.	III.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
6.	Pridie Nonas.	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
7.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.	VIII.
8.	VII.	VI.	VI.	VI.
9.	VI.	V.	V.	V.
10.	V.	IV.	IV.	IV.
11.	IV.	III.	III.	III.
12.	III.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	Pridie Idus.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14.	IDIBUS.	XIV.	XVIII.	XVI.
15.	XIV.	XIII.	XVII.	XV.
16.	XIII.	XII.	XVI.	XIV.
17.	XII.	XI.	XV.	XIII.
18.	XI.	X.	XIV.	XII.
19.	X.	IX.	XIII.	XI.
20.	IX.	VIII.	XII.	X.
21.	VIII.	VII.	XI.	IX.
22.	VII.	VI.	X.	VIII.
23.	VI.	V.	IX.	VII.
24.	V.	IV.	VIII.	VI.
25.	IV.	III.	VII.	V.
26.	III.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Ante Kalendas Martias.
27.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
28.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
29.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
30.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
31.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	Pridie Kalendas Martias.

APPENDIX II.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the as (*assis*), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the as were designated as follows:—

Uncia,	<i>one ounce</i> ;	$\frac{1}{12}$		of an as.
Sextans, ntis,	<i>two ounces</i> ;	$\frac{2}{12}$	that is,	$\frac{1}{6}$ "
Quadrans, ntis,	<i>three</i> "	$\frac{3}{12}$	"	$\frac{1}{4}$ "
Triens, ntis,	<i>four</i> "	$\frac{4}{12}$	"	$\frac{1}{3}$ "
Quincunx, ncis,	<i>five</i> "	$\frac{5}{12}$		"
Sēmis, issis,	<i>six</i> "	$\frac{6}{12}$	"	$\frac{1}{2}$ "
Septunx, ncis,	<i>seven</i> "	$\frac{7}{12}$		"
Bes, bēsis,	<i>eight</i> "	$\frac{8}{12}$	"	$\frac{2}{3}$ "
Dodrans,* ntis,	<i>nine</i> "	$\frac{9}{12}$	"	$\frac{3}{4}$ "
Dextans,† ntis,	<i>ten</i> "	$\frac{10}{12}$	"	$\frac{5}{6}$ "
Deunx, ncis,	<i>eleven</i> "	$\frac{11}{12}$		"

* = de-quadrans.

† = de-sextans.

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus *terna jūgēra et septunces* (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)* : *hēres ex asse, heir to the entire estate, ex dodrante, to three-fourths, etc.* So *fēnus ex triente factum ērat bessibus* (Cic.), *interest had risen from $\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. (per month) to $\frac{2}{3}$* ; or *from 4 to 8 per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the *as* was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (" *vilem redigatur ad assem*," Hor. at. 1, 1, 43). The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the *sestertius* (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, or a little more than *2d.* The *sesterce* was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. *Sestertius* is a contraction for *sēmis tertius*, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e. $2\frac{1}{2}$. This was often written *IIS*, whence the common abbreviation *HS* or *HS.*

§ 931. Sums of 1000 and under are counted regularly : *as, mille sestertii, 1000 sesterces* ; *trecenti sestertii, 300 sesterces*. But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural *sestertia* was employed, with which *millia* must be understood, unless expressed : *as duo sestertia* or *duo millia sestertiūm, 2000 sesterces*.

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, *dēcies*, &c., are used with *sestertium* or *HS.*, the words "*centēna millia*" being understood. Thus

dĕcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sestertii dĕcies in aerārium rettūlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.—LIV. 45, 4.

Syngŕapha sestertii centies, *a Bill of ten millions of sesterces*.—CIC. *Phil.* 2, 37.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margaritam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—SÜET. *Caes.* 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement: as, accēpi vicies dūcenta trīginta quinque millia quadringentos dĕcem et septem nummos, *2,235,417 sesterces*.—CIC. *Verr.* 1, 14.

APPENDIX III.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called nōmen, being *the name of his gens*; the third, cognōmen, being that *of his family* (fāmīlia); the first, prænōmen, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called agnōmen, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus*. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. *Am.* 1, 3) is called M. F., *i. e.* *Marci filius*; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. Strabo; *i. e.* *son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus*.

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Semprōnia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

APPENDIX IV.—ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 936. A. PRAENOMINA.

A.	Anulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

§ 937. B. TITLES, &c. (ANCIENT).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus
Cos.	Consul.		(surnames of Jupiter).
Coes.	Consules.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Dea.	Designatus.	Quir.	Quirites.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	S.P.Q.R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Imp.	Imperator.*	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
F. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

§ 938. C. MISCELLANEOUS (ANCIENT).

A.	Absolvo, ¹ Antiquo. ²	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno. ¹		
N. L.	Non liquet. ¹	H. C. S. E.	Hic conditus situs est. ³
U. R.	Uti Rogas. ²	H. M. H. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. ³
A. U. C.	Anno arbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus. ³	N.	Nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	Obiit.
F.	Filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or	} Salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
S. only.		S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo. ⁴
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit. ⁴	Pot.	Potestas.
F. C.	Faciendum curavit. ³	V.	Vixit. ³

¹ Judicial formula.² Used in voting (with respect to laws).³ Sepulchral.⁴ Epistolary.

§ 939. D. MODERN.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
act.	cetera.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices	MS., MSS.	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.		
del.	dele, deleatur.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.B.	Nota bene.
e.g.	exempli gratiâ,	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
etc.	et cetera.		
h.e.	hoc est.	Obs.	Observa.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
		q.v.	quod vide.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	sc.	scilicet.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
I. ctus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
ibid., ib.	ibidem.		
id.	idem.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.	V.D.M.	Verbi divini Minister.
loc., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.

APPENDIX V.—VERSUS MEMORIALES.

1. DIFFERENCE OF QUANTITY IN CERTAIN WORDS.

- 1 Est *ācer* in silvis, equus *ācer* Olympia vincit.
Non *appāret* iners, facienda*s appāret* ut res.
Culigas, manicas *cāligas*que ubi cernere non est.
Voce tremente *cānet*, qui toto vertice *cānet*.
- 5 Deficit ille *cānis*, cui candent tergora *cānis*.
In magno et *cāro* prostat *cāro* rara macello.
Cedo facit cessi, *cecidi* cado, caedo *cecidi*.
Fert ancilla *cōlum*, penetrat res humida *cōlum*.
Vin' bonus esse *cōmes*? Sernones occipe *cōmes*.
- 10 Compte *cōmas* puer; heus! *cōmis cōmes* esto magist: .
Quod mihi *consuēram*, *consuēram* tendere rete.
Bellandi *cupīdo* damno est sua saepe *cupīdo*.
Non violant *decōris* memores praecepta *decōris*.
Dedēre dis animum par est, qui tanta *dedēre*.
- 15 Vin' tibi *dicamus*, cui carmina nostra *dicemus*?
Diffidit is foedus, male qui *diffidit* amico.
Per *rēges*, deus, atque *dūces dūces*que *rēges*que.
Carnem sanus *ēdit*, carmen doctissimus *ēdit*.
Edūcat hic catulos, quos mox *edūcat* in apros.
- 20 Si sapis, *ēs*, ut sis: nimirum non *ēs* edendo.
Qui *fābula* ludunt, pueris et *fābula* grata est.
Ni sit fida *fīdes*, non *fīdes*: quaere fideles.
Decepit me saepe *frētum* nimis abiete *frētum*.
Per quod quis peccat, per *īdem* punitur et *īdem*.
- 25 *Indicat* bellum rex huic, qui se *īndicat* hostem.
Non talos *jacērent*, si ludicra prava *jacērent*.
Si potans sermone *lābes*, fuge: nam prope *lābes*.
Est gravis ille *lābor*, cuius sub pondere *lābor*.
Cum ratione *lēges*, quem magna ad munera *lēges*.
- 30 Tu, quaecunque *lēgis*, non instar *lēgis* habebis.
In silvis *lepōres*, in verbis quaere *lepōres*.
Im̄erbis *lēvis*; *lēvis* est, qui pondere parvo est.
Non *līber*, ut sis *līber*, aget, sed recta voluntas.
Deceptura viros pingit *māla* femina *mālas*.
- 35 In rate triste *mālum*, quum fracta est turbine *mālus*.
Mālō mihi pulchrum *mālō* decerpere *mālum*.
Nobilis est mulier *matrōna*, at *Matrōna* flumen.
Officium *mīseris* offers, si *mīseris* aera.
Frumentum *mōlītur*, sed homo *mōlītur* agenda.
- 40 Sunt bene *mōrati* multi neq̄ in urbe *mōrati*.
Non sunt se *fisi*, *nīst* qui sunt numine *nīst*.

- Nūtere* cum studio, si vis aliquando *nūtere*.
 Sit *nōta nōta* : *nōtus* ventus, sed *nōtus* amicus.
Oblītus decoris ne dedecore *oblītus* adsit.
- 45 *Obsidet* *obsidens*, *possidens* *possidet* exin.
Occidet latro, misere quoad *occidet* ipse.
 Omnia jam *fiunt*, *fiēri* quae posse negabam.
Os ōris produc, sed *ōs ossis* corripe, quaeaso.
 Stagnat sicca *pālus*, fixus stat *pālus* acutus.
- 50 Saepe puer *pāret*, *pāret* ut sibi dora parentis.
 Gaudet uterque *pārens*, quum filius est bene *pārens*
Pendēre vult justus, sed fur *pendēre* recusat.
 Est color in *pica* *pīcoque* nivisque *pīcisque*.
 Ludo *pīla*, *pīlum* contorqueo, *pīla* columna est.
- 55 Pro reti aut regione *plāga* est, pro verbere *plāgā*.
 Sunt cives urbis *pōpulus*, sed *pōpulus* arbor.
 Si vitare *pōtes*, ne plurima pocula *pōtes*.
Prōfectus ostende, schola non ante *prōfectus*.
 Non quae quisque *rēfert*, sapientis discere *rēfert*.
- 60 Dat *rēpente* gradu serpens, fuge, damna *rēpente*.
 Si qua *sēde* *sēdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,
 Illa *sēde* *sēde*, si nova tuta minus.
 Lacte *sērum*, *sērumque* die secernitur ipso.
 Num natale *sōlum* placet omni tempore *sōlum* ?
- 65 Hos non *suspicio*, quibus est *suspicio* prompta.
 Integer est *tōtus*, *tōtus* est, quotus ordine, quivis.
Tribula grana terit, *tribuli* nascuntur in agris.
 Gressum fige *vādīs*, quando per flumina *vādīs*.
 Spondet *vas vādīs*, at *vas vāsīs* continet escam.
- 70 Si transire *vēlis* maris undas, utere *vēlis*.
 I *vēneris* ad *Vēneris*, mecum *vēneris* ut inde.
 Merx *vēnit* numis, *vēnit* huc aliunde profectus.
Vincitur victus, vinctus non *vincitur* ultro.
 Ni probitate *vīres*, male jactas, inscie, *vīres*.
- 75 Ut rem quamque *vōces*, debes cognoscere *vōces*.
Vōmere quam tollis, *vōmere* agrum terra videtur.

2. DIFFERENCE OF MEANING IN CERTAIN WORDS.

- Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed crescit *acanthus* in agris.
 Plus *aetate* graves hieme atque *aetate* premuntur
 Qui *confirmat*, *ait*, sed qui responsa dat, *inquit*.
- 80 *Alga* venit pelago, sed nascitur *ulva* palude.
 Sancta voces *arcana*, putes *secreta* profana.
Arma tegunt corpus, quod figerē *tela* minantur.
Armus brutorum est, *humerus* ratione fruentum.

- Turbat *asilus* equos, miseros suscepit *asylum*.
 85 Fac *felix* aliis videare tibi que *beatus*.
Bilis inest felli, si *fel* vesica putatur.
 Qui sculpsit, *caelat*, servans abscondita *celat*.
 Splendens *candidus* atque *niger*, non *albus* et *ator*.
 Haec *cassis* galea est, hi *casses* retia signant :
 90 *Casside* conde caput, capiantur *cassibus* apri.
Clava ferit, *clavus* firmat, *clavis*que recludit.
Cominus ense ferit, jaculo cadit *eminus* ipse.
Comoeli scenam, *comedones* quaerite coenam.
Conamur magnam, *molimur* difficilem rem.
 95 *Consortes* fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,
 Unum *collegas* efficit officium ;
 Sed caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa *sodales*.
Corrigit invitos, *emendat* cura sequaces.
Sanguis inest venis, *cruur* est de corpore fusus.
 100 Immotus *jacet*, at motus sunt signa *cubantis*.
 Est *cutis* in carne, at detracta a corpore *pellis*.
Delige cum cura, tum *dilige* semper amicum.
Delo quod scriptum est, sed flammam *extinguo* lucernae
Longius ire nequit, quicumque *diutius* ivit.
 105 Uxorem vir *ducit*, at illi *fermina* *nubit*.
Edicunt reges, *indicit* festa sacerdos ;
Indicat auctorem facti, qui novit eundem.
Expetit hoc nemo, quod non satis *expedit* ipsi.
Expugnat capiens, *oppugnans* obsidet urbem.
 110 *Fas* res divinas, at *jus* humana tuetur.
Forpice sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent,
 At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.
Fornix est arcus, sed *fornax* saxa perurit.
Pistor habet *furnum*, *fornace* hypocausta calescunt.
 115 Mordet equus *frenos*, vector quem flectit *habenis*.
Frontem dic capitis, *frondem* dic arboris esse.
 Gignit ager *fruges*, nascuntur in arbore *fructus*.
 Vincentes *fugies*, sed victos ipse *fugabis*.
 Quis *duxit* bellum, Poenus quod *gessit* et *egit* ?
 120 *Gibba* premit tergum, sed collo *struma* molesta est.
 Bruto *gurgulio* est, homini *gula*, *guttur* utriusque.
 Esca *sapit* pulchre, quam *gustat* lingua libenter.
 Mobile *dependet*, sed res immobilis *haeret*.
 Ales *hirundo* canit, nat *hirudo*, movetur *arundo*.
 125 Arma movent *hostes*, *inimici* jurgia nectunt.
Invidus invidiae reus ipse *invitus* agitur.
 Castra *sacramentum*, *jusjurandum* iora poscunt.
Lacteo lac sugo ; *lacto* lac praebeo nato :

- Infans dum lactet, nutrix hunc sedula lactat.
 130 *Laetitiam* vultu prae te fers, *gaudia* mente.
 Ne fer *laternam*, quum prodis, absque *lucerna*.
 Non *licet* asse mihi, qui me non asse *licetur*.
 Tango *lyram* digitis, sed *liram* vomere findo.
 Ad mare *litus* habes, ambas ad flumina *ripas*.
 135 Scripta *locos* praebent, praebent *loca* terra polusque.
Humidus est intra *madidusque* est *uidus* extra.
Articulus membri, sed *membrum* corporis est pars.
Mente pia *mensa* fruire, omni *mente* parata.
 Venduntur *merces*, operantibus est data *merces*.
 140 Sperne *minas* auri, vulgi contemne *minas*, rex.
 Confundit temere *miserum* cum *paupere* tiro.
Muros cum vallis ac fossis *moenia* dicas.
 Dat *mortem* natura, *necem* vis, fataque *letum*.
Mulcet equos famulus, sed vacca rustica *mulget*.
 145 In muris *mures* *muri*que in moenibus insunt.
 Sis unus semper *nostrum* *nostrique* memento.
Nucleus in pomis, *granum* reperitur in herbis.
Otia dant *odium*: non hoc habet *otia* multa.
Olfacis id, quod *olet*: *fragrat*, non foetet odorum.
 150 Dic, *opus* est, *operam* confundere semper *opesque*.
Nox operit terras, fures te quum *opperiuntur*.
 Qui didicit, *gnarus*, qui exercuit, ille *peritus*.
Praeco vocet cives, adeat *caducifer* hostes.
Vas vitam, nummos *praes* praestat, *sponsor* utrumque.
 155 *Prandia* nulla gulo nisi post *jentacula* sumit.
Prora prior, *puppis* pars ultima, et ima *carina*.
Prospera fert fortuna, deus dat *fausta* supremus.
Prunus habet *prunum*, *prunam* focus, aura *pruinam*.
 Forfice *tendentur*, quos stricta novacula *raudit*.
 160 Ipse *regit* cives *regnans* rex sive *senatus*.
Aemulus invidia, *rivalis* amore movetur.
 Corpore *robustus* diceris, *pectore* fortis.
 In terris sunt *sancta*, deo quae *sacra* putantur.
 Lignum est oblongum *scutum*, *clipeusque* rotundum est.
 165 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste.
Seditiosus erit civis, gens victa *rebellis*.
Aetatis nostrae pars est extrema *senectus*.
 Natura *sermo* fluit, est *oratio* facta.
 Qui *simul* egreditur, non tecum semper it *una*.
 170 Quae non sunt, *simulo*; quae sunt, ea *dissimulantur*.
 Sperne *merum*, contemne *pericula*, despice *vulgus*.
Tempora florescunt, dum cingant *tempora* cani.
 Est *aetas* hominum, contra sunt *tempora* rerum.

- Hastam dic *teretem*, sphaeram dic esse *rotundam*.
 175 *Tranquillus* placide transit, recubante *quieto*.
Ungula conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*
 Est *vacuus* non obsessus, non plenus *inanis*.
Miles vallat opus: stabulum *sepimus* et hortum.
 Si *via* longa tua est, sit *iter* non segne, viator.
 180 Quos *vicit*, *vinxit*, dum *vixit*, barbarus hostis.
 Ne confunde *viros*, *vires*, *virusque virumque*.
 Illum tu *caveas*, tibi qui non cavit amicus.
Coeptus erit laedi, qui laedere coeperit ipse.
Consulo te doctum; *tibi consulo*, dum tua *curo*.
 185 *Conveniunt* alios alii, quos *convenit* inter.
Imponis stupido, cui res *imponis* inanes.
In studia incurbas, libris *incumbere* noli.
 Si nos *dura miment*, *maneant* constantia nobis.
 Sit *persona sui similis*, *similis sibi* res sit.
 190 A moerore *vacet*, studiis cui rite *vacandum* est.

3. NAMES OF RELATIONSHIP.

- Agnati* patris, *cognati* matris habentur.
 Dic *patruos* patris fratres, *amitasque* sorores.
 Frater *avunculus* est, soror est *matertera*, matris.
 Quos fratres generant natos, dices *patruelos*,
 195 Sed *consobrinos* dic, quos peperere sorores;
 Quos soror et frater gignunt, dices *amitinos*.
 Vir natae *gener* est, *nurus* est pro conjugate nati.
 Uxoris genitor *socer* est, *socrusque* genitrix.
Vitricus haud verus pater est, materque *noverca*.
 200 Ipse viri frater *levir*, sed *fratria* fratris
 Uxor; *glos* uxor fratris, soror atque mariti.

4. THE MUSES.

- Oris* gesta canens transactis tempora reddidit.
Melpomene tragico proclamat moesta boatu.
 Comica lascivo gaudet sermone *Thalia*.
 205 Dulciloquos calamos *Euterpe* flatibus urget.
Terpsichore affectus citharis movet, imperat, auget.
 Plectra gerens *Erato* saltat pede, carmine, vultu.
 Carmina *Calliope* libris heroica mandat.
Uranie coeli motus scrutatur et astra.
 210 Signat cuncta manu, loquitur *Polyhymnia* gestu.
 Mentis *Apollineae* vis has movet undique *Musas*,
 In medio residens complectitur cuncta *Phoebus*.

5. NAMES OF THE WINDS.

- Asper ab axe ruit *Boreas*, furit *Eurus* ab ortu,
Auster amat medium solem, *Zephyrusque* cadentem.
- 215 Flant *Subsolanus*, *Vulturnus* et *Eurus* ab ortu ;
Circius occasum *Zephyrusque Favonius* adflant.
 E solis medio surgunt *Notus*, *Africus*, *Auster* ;
 Conveniunt *Aquilo*, *Boreas* et *Caurus* ab arsa.
-

6. SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC.

- Sunt *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*,
 220 *Libraque*, *Scorpius*, *Arcitenens*, *Caper*, *Amphora*, *Pisc*
-

7. THE SEVEN WISE MEN OF GREECE.

Cum *Solone* *Thales*, *Cleobulus* cum *Feriaro*,
Chilon *Spartanus*, *Pittacus* atque *Bias*.

8. THE FOUR SEASONS.

- Ver*, *Aestas*, *Auctumnus*, *Hiems* dominantur in anno.
Aestas a *Geminis*, *Auctumnus* *Virgine* surgit ;
 225 *Bruma* *Sagittifero*, *Ver* *Piscibus* incipit esse.
-

9. THE NAMES OF THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

- Nomina quae septem cujusque adjuncta diebus
Hebdomadis, sex constituunt cum sole planetae.
 Primum rite diem sibimet *Sol* vindicat almus.
 Proxima fraterno succedit *Luna* nitore.
- 230 Tertius insequitur rutilo *Mars* sidere fulgens.
Mercurius quartum signat mediumque dierum.
 Ab *Jove* quinta dies insigne est nomen adeptum.
 Sexta salutiferum sequitur *Venus* atque parentem.
 Cuncta supergressi *Saturni* septima lux est.

THE END,

NOTICE.

THE present Work is an Abridgment of the Student's Latin Grammar, adapted to the use of Junior Classes. One of the main objects of the Work is to introduce into Schools some of the results of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists, without changing the general form and arrangement of the Latin Grammar.

The numbering of the paragraphs of the Student's Grammar has been retained, in order to facilitate reference from one work to the other.

Uniform with the present Work.

A SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR. Abridged from the larger work of Professor CURTIUS. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE GREEK ACCIDENCE. Extracted from the above work. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA: Part I. An INTRODUCTION to GREEK, Containing a Grammar, Delectus, Exercise-Book, and Vocabularies. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA: Part II. A READING BOOK. Containing Short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History; with a Lexicon. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA: Part III. An INTRODUCTION to GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION: containing a systematic course of Exercises on the Syntax, with the principal rules of Syntax, and an English-Greek Vocabulary to the Exercises. By Dr. WM. SMITH. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

For Colleges and the Upper Forms in Schools.

THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR. By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. Post 8vo. 6s.

THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR. By Professor CURTIUS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Post 8vo. 6s.

ELUCIDATIONS OF CURTIUS' GREEK GRAMMAR. Translated from the German. By EVELYN ABBOT. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

PLATO. THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO; with Notes in English from STALLBAUM, and SCHLEIERMACHER's Introductions. 12mo. 3s. 6d.





